



The Can he plan



Contents

Revision

Writing Skills

- How to answer a dialogue
- Reading comprehension
- Writing Paragraphs & Emails
- Common writing skills

Module

Unit 1:
 A great summer

 Unit 2:

My network

• Unit 3: ----My time

· Review A: -----



• Unit 5: -----bluove bortasala

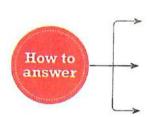
Food for thought

• Review B: -----

delignation of the second

riting Skills

معالجة للأسئلة الصعبة التي قد تواجه الطالب في امتحان الصف الأول الإعدادي



- Dialogues
- Reading comprehensions
- Paragraphs, emails, blog

Dialogue

••• كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال المحادثة

- يعطى الطالب محادثة مكونة من عشرة تبادلات حوارية بها خمسة فراغات (ثلاثة ردود وسؤالين)
 - مطلوب من الطالب أن يكمل الفراغات بأسئلة أو جمل كاملة دون أعطاءه جزء من الأجابة .
 - المحادثة يسبقها موقف توضيحي.

كيفية تكوين السؤال لاستخدامه في حل سؤال المحادثة

ىنقسم السؤال إلى نوعين:

Yes / No question (؟.....ا

- إذا اشتملت الإجابة على Yes, / No, نبدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد أو ناقص ويكون معناه «هل….؟»
 - الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة تعد جزءاً أساسياً في تكوين أي سؤال

Helping verbs

الأفعال المساعدة

am - is - are - was - were - have has - had

Modals

can - could - shall - should - will would - may - might - must

- إذا كان بالجملة أي من الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة السابقة نستخدمه في السؤال كالآتي:
 - A Can he play tennis?
 - B Yes, he can play tennis.

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة فعل مساعد أو ناقص نستخدم do / does / did حسب زمن الجملة.

- Does Rana come early?
- BYes, Rana comes earlu.
- A Did you play tennis?
- Yes, I played tennis.

Wh-question هاستفهاه 2

- نستخدم كلمات الاستفهام في السؤال حسب الإجابة الموجودة (مكان – زمان – شخص – شيء – طريقة . . . :)

?..... فعل ← فاعل ← فعل مساعد / ناقص ← کلمة استفهام

Where is she eating?

B She is eating in the dining room.

Question words

The second second second second second			
What	ما/ماذا (للأشياء)	What time	ماالوقت
Where	أين (للمكان)	What colour	مالون
Who	من (للأشخاص)	What subject	ما المادة الدراسية
Whose	لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)	How many	ععداً رمح
When	متى (للزمن)	How long	ما المدة/طولِ
Why	لماذا (للسبب)	How heavy	ما وزن
Which	أيهماً (للتخيير)	How much	ما ثمن/كم كمية
How	كيف (للطريقة/للحال)	How often	كم عدد المرات
What class	ما الصف الدراسى	How far	(قفاسملا) عدبي رمخ
What age	ماعمر		



إذا كان الفعل الأساسي في الجملة (have - has - had) يعامل مثل أي فعل آخر

. do - does - did باستخدام

What do they have?

When does he have lunch?

B They have a nice car.

B He has lunch at 2 o'clock.

🛂 إذا كان الفعل الأساسي في الجملة (do - does - did) يعامل مثل أي فعل آخر.

When does Huda do her homework?

When did Sama do exercise?

B Huda does her homework at night.

B Sama did exercise in the morning.

السؤال عن الفاعل: عندما نسأل عن الفاعل نحذفه ونضع مكانه كلمة الإستفهام ونكمل الجملة كما هي:

Mho wins the game?

What crashed into the wall?

B Ahmed wins the game.

A car crashed into the wall.

– عندما نَسأل بـ Who عن مفعول عاقل نكوِّن السؤال بالطريقة المعتادة باستخدام فعل ناقص أو مساعد بعدها :

Who did you meet?

I met Ahmed.

(How many - How much) والمنتسال المسافرة الاسم الذي يعد ثم الناقص ثم الناقص ثم الناقص ألله المسافرة الاسم الذي يعد ثم الناقص ألم ال

Model question 9

نموذج السؤال كما يأتى في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Basem and Farida are talking	about Farida's best friend.
Basem: Who is your best friend, Farido	1?
Farida: My best friend is a girl.	
Basem: Amal is a nice name. @	?
Farida: She is 13 years old.	
Basem: 0	?
Farida: Her favorite subjects are science	ce and maths.
Basem: What is her favorite sport?	
Farida : 🐠	254 . 1 H C +
Basem: Is she tall?	ASKTON .
Farida: 6 9800800 bmia8	

Answer

- 1- Her name is Amal.
- 2- How old is she?
- 3- What are her favorite subjects?
- 4- She likes tennis.
- 5- Yes, she is.

2 Reading Comprehension

- •••• كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال قطعة الفهم
 - يعطى الطالب نص مكوِّن من حوالي ١٠٠ كلمة.
- مطلوب من الطالب أن يجيب عن ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد وثلاثة أسئلة مقالية.

| خطوات تساعدك على إجابة قطعة الفهم:

- 🕕 اقرأ الأسئلة أولا قبل قراءة القطعة نفسها لأن هذا يعطيك فكرة عامة عن موضوع القطعة.
 - 🥝 انتبه إلى ما تطلبه هذه الأسئلة من معلومات.
 - 🕃 اقرأ القطعة كلها بتأن مرة ثانية قبل أن تقوم بالإجابة عن الأسئلة.
- عندما تجد جملة فيها إجابة سؤال ضغ خطاً تحتها وأيضا إذا وجدت أرقام انتبه لها لأن واضغ الامتحان عادة
 ما يسأل عنها.
 - 🧔 اذا صادفت كلمة لا تعرف معناها حاول تخمين المعنى.

كيف تخمن معنى كلمة لا تعرف معناها

🕕 قد تتمكن من تخمين معنى كلمة بسبب وجود عبارة أو كلمة دالة على التناقض مثل :

ولكن yet = لكن but = في المقابل in contrast - على العكس من../على خلاف Unlike



- Some people think that sports are unimportant, but I think they are vital.
- لو أنك لا تعرف معنى كلمه vital، يمكنك تخمين معناها حيث أن الجملة تقول «يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرياضة شئ غير مهم ، لكنني أعتقد أنها». من خلال السياق نفهم أن vital عكس unimportant وبهذا يكون تخمين معنى الكلمة سهل وهو (ضروري) أو (مهم)
 - 🙋 قد تخمن معنى الكلمة أيضا من خلال البدايات أو النهايات المتعلقة بأصل الكلمة
 - مثال: ﴿ نفهم من خلال السابقة -im في كلمة impossible (التي تعني "غير" أو " ليس" أنها عكس (التي تعني "غير" أو " ليس" أنها عكس (possible فيكون معناها [غير ممكن/مستحيل)
 - مثال آخر: نفهم من خلال اللاحقة less في كلمة homeless التي تعنى (بدون/بلا) أن معنى الكلمة (بلا مأوى/مشرد}
 - ③ يمكنك تخمين المعنى من سياق الجملة من خلال الكلمات التي تسبق الكلمة أو التي تليها .
 - 🚳 مثال :

- It rained hard through the night so the ground was wet.
- ماذا تعنى كلمه <mark>Wet؛ إذا كنت لا تعرف معناها بمقدورك تخمينه من خلال الجملة التي سبقتها " كانت السماء تمطر بغزارة خلال الليل لذلك الأرض كانت.... لقد كانت تمطر بشده مما يعني أن الأرض لابد أنها كانت (مبتلة).</mark>
- والمناف طريقة بسيطة جدًا: ترجم الجملة كلها واترك فراغ مكان الكلمة التي لا تعرفها ثم فكر أي كلمة باللغة العربية تتماشى مع معنى الجملة فمثلا أنت قرأت جملة تقول:
 - The work is boring. There is nothing I find interesting about it.
 - حاول تخمين معنى "boring" هنا.

ما هي الأنماط الأكثر شيوعا في استُلة قطعة الفهم:

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

- 🚺 قد يطلب واضعَ الامتحان منك الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) في النص من خلال صيغَ مثل:
- The main idea of the passage is......
- The passage is mainly about......

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.



- تكون جملة وليست سؤالا.
- هي النقطة الأساسية التي يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- غالباً تكون في أول جملة أو آخر جملة في النص.
- الجمل الأخرى في النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.

المثال الآتى: 🚳 لاحظ المثال

- ما باللون الأحمر هي الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هي التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got a new coat. My new coat has blue lines and red sleeves. My coat is very nice and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a picture of a snow man. I will wear my coat to school.

- وقد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى

ثانياً: الأسئلة المقالية (open-ended questions)

- قد يكون هناك في القطعة رأى/ نصيحة ويسألك هل أنت موافق على هذا الرأى/هذه النصيحة أم لا مع ذكر السبب: • Do you agree with this opinion / advice in the passage? Why / Why not?
 - 2 قد يرتبط موضوع القطعة بك فيسألك مثلاً : هل تحب أو هل تكره _ _ _ _ _ ؟ لم؟ ولم لا ؟
- Do you like /dislike....? Why / Why not?
 - ا 🗿 قد يطلب منك ان تعطى عنواناً مناسباً للقطعة أو تذكر الفكرة الرئيسية لها:
- Give a suitable title to the passage.

ار شادات للاجابة عن أستلة قطعة الفهم

ثاث: اُسئلة (open-ended) استفهامية

🚺 قد يطلب واضعَ الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لإحدى الفقرات في النص في جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

• Summarize the first / second √ third paragraph (into one sentence).

in and thereby , i. .



- حدد اسم الشخص او الشئ او الحيوان الاساسى بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها
- َ حَدَدُ اهْمُ شَيَّ يَخْصَ ذَلِكَ الشَخْصَ أَوِ الشَيَّ اوِ الحيوان واستَخْدَمَ اهمَ الافعال بالفقرة للتَعبير عَن ذَلَكَ وممكن استخدام افعال اخرى تؤدى نفس المعنى.
 - استَبعَد الأفكار الفرعية او الغير أساسية او المعلومات الأقل أهمية
 - أكتب الفكرة الأساسية في حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسبٍ ما يطلب

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines.

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful visit for them. Tourists also come to see the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

نتبع الخطوات السابقة:

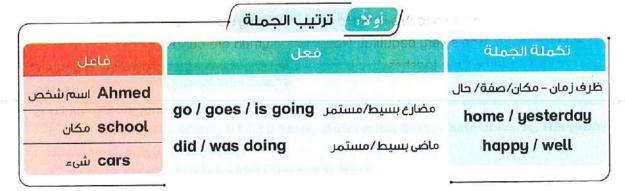
- ا- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل اساسى بالسائحين tourists
- ٢- أهم ما يخصهم هو زيارة مصر والأماكن السياحية بها والأفعال التي تعبر عن ذلك come / see /visit
 - ٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.
 - 3- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids and the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.

3 Paragraph Writing

- •••• كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية
- مطلوب من الطالب كتابة فقرة إنشائية (paragraph) مكونة من حوالي ثمانين (٨٠ ألي ٩٠) كلمة عن أحد موضوعات الكتاب المدرسي.
 - لابد أن يقرأ الطالب العنوان جيدًا.
 - حتى نَكُونُ الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن ندرس الآتي جيدًا؛



والمختلفة الجمل المختلفة

صفة + verb to be + فاعل	-	My grandfather is kind.



تعليمات مهمة للطالب بخصوص الشكل العام للفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph)

💩 نترك مسافة صغيرة (تعادل كلمة صغيرة) في أول سطر فقط.



استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (v + d / ed / ied) عند الحديث عن الحقائق والعادات، وزمن الماضى البسيط (will + inf.) عند الحديث عن موضوع في الماضي، وزمن المستقبل (will + inf.) عند الحديث عن موضوع في المستقبل.

💩 يمكن أن يكون عنوان الموضوع جملة تستخدم كأحد الجمل في الكتابة.

Model question

نموذج السؤال الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية



Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80-90) words on:

Your family

My name is Habib(a) and this is my family. This is my sister. Her name is Radwa. She is two years old. She's very beautiful. Nawal and Ayman are our parents. Our mother is a doctor. Our father is a teacher. We have one cousin, Arwa. Her parents are my uncle and aunt. Their names are Magdy and Donia. We always visit them. They visit us, too. They're very kind. They always get me presents. I like them very much. My family is wonderful.



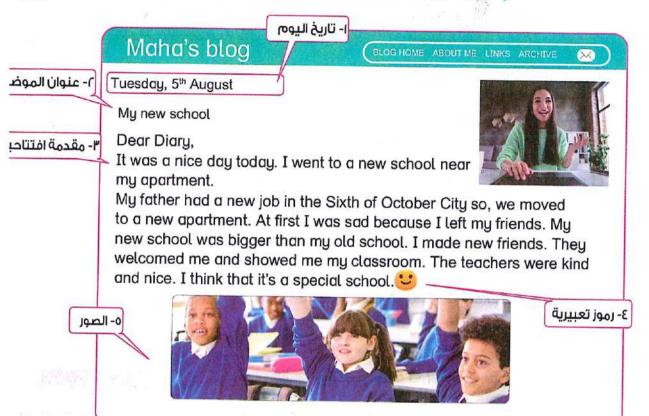
How to write an email کیف تکتب برید الإلیکترونی

	1. 在 NET \$100 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	X
To:	ىرسل إليه:	البريد الإليكترونى الخاص باله
From:	اسل:	البريد الإليكتروني الخاص بالر
Subject:		موضوع أو عنوان الرسالة:
المرسل إلية + Dear	0.50c 0.50	
How are you? I v	want to tell you about + الموضوع	
	فقرة الإنشائية ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ ـ	تكتب هنا جمل عادية مثل ال
See you soon.		4
اسم الراسل	A Company of the Comp	
¥ .	يتابة بريد الكتروني بشكل منظم: 🕒	التبع الخطوات الآتية ا
	عابه بريد الخبروني بسحل منطها:	البع اططوات الالبياط
سم المرسل إليه:	ترونى أبدأ بكلمة "Dear" أو "Hi" ثم اكتب ار	🚺 فى السطر الأول من بريدك الإليك
	"I'm happy to write to you"	ݸ فى السطر الثانى ابدأ بـ:
	"Thanks for writing to me"	
		😝 أسأل عن أحوال صديقك بـ:
"How are you?" / "H	How are things?" / "How's life?"	9
	کترونی ولماذا کتبته: صدر ا	و اذكر سبب إرسالك للبريد الإلب
I want to tell you a		
. مِن فكرة:	ونى على فكرة واحدة فقط وليس أكثر لنو منتخط	عجب أن يحتوى بريدك الإليكتر [
"cool" ji "awes	ىتخدام لغة غير رسمية مثل كلمات: "ome	 عند الكتابة إلى صديق يمكنك الله
"How are you?" / "H	How are things?" / "How's life?"	- an owners, a s
"See you soon."	ں بعبارات مثل: "Write soon." أو Hope to hear from you"	o قم بإنهاء بريدك الإليكترونر أو "By for you now." أو ".soon





Write a blog of about FIFTY (50) words to your friend about your new school. Your name is Maha:



- خطوات كتابة التدوينة:

- 🕕 قم بكتابة تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة يومية جديدة.
- 🙆 ثم قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب للموضوع الذى سنتحدث عنه.
 - ايدأ اليومية بكتابة "Dear Diary".
- 👍 قم بوصف الأماكن والأحداث التي مرت عليك خلال اليوم بلغة غير رسمية.
 - 👌 قم بوصف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
 - 6 يجب أن تتضمن اليومية على بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثلً "I" أو "my".
- 🖞 قم باستخدام بعض الصور المرئية والرموز التعبيرية لتوصيل الفكرة بشكل سريع.
 - 🔡 أعط رأيك في الموضوع الذي نتحدث عنه باستخدام بعض العبارات مثل:

"I think that" gi "In my opinion...."

Common writing mistakes

أخطاء شائعة في الكتابة باللغة الانجليزية

أمثلة من الأخطاء التي قد تأتي في سؤال Read and correct مع الاجابة عنها:

أمثلة من أخطاء الترقيم التي قديقع فيها كثير من الطلاب:

نستخدم الحرف الكبير (Capital letter) في الكتابة في الحالات الآتية:

– الضمير (I) في أي مكان في الجملة.

• <u>i</u> go to school early.

الجملة خطأ 🗶

I go to school early.

الجملة صحيحة 🗸

– الحرف الأول من الكلمة الأولى في الجملة.

- $\underline{\mathbf{m}}$ brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but $\underline{\mathbf{i}}$ came back at 2 p.m.

الجملة خطأ **X**

- My brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but I came back at 2 p.m.

الجملة صحيحة 🗸

– الحروف الأولى من أسماء الأشخاص والدول والمدن والمعالم والأماكن الشهيرة والجنسيات واللغات والاختصارات والألقاب والعناوين وأيام الأسبوع والشهور والمؤسسات والمهرجانات.

maged did his Homework and watched tv.

الجملة خطأ 🗶

Maged did his homework and watched TV.

الجملة صحيحة 🗸

i can speak english and french well.

الجملة خطأ 📈 الحملة صحيحة

I can speak English and French well.

🟚 توضعَ النقطة Full stop (.) في نهاية الجملة الخبرية و الأمرية.

ولا **No/ Yes (,) كتعب**ر عن توقفات موجزة فى الجمل وبين كلمات فى قائمة وبعد **No/ Yes** ولا وترك مسافة قبل الفواصل عمومًا.

· After I ate I went to sleep

الجملة خطأ 🗶

After I ate, I went to sleep.

الجملة صحيحة 🗸

(s) توضع الفاصلة العليا Apostrophe (') قبل (s) الملكية للاسم المفرد، بينمانضع (') للملكية للجمع المنتهى بـ (s):

We met at <u>Ali</u> party.

الجملة خطأ 🗶

• We met at Ali's party.

الجملة صديحة 🗸

• These are the **boys** toys.

الجملة خطأ 🗶

These are the boys' toys.

الجملة صحيحة 🗸

- توضحَ الفاصلة العليا في الاختصارات مثل: let's - don't - it's ... etc

• I dont have a car. In the land

الجملة خطأ 🗶

· I don't have a car.

الجملة صحيحة 🗸

(?) ون نهاية السؤال. (?) Question mark في نهاية السؤال.

Do you have a <u>car</u>

الجملة خطأ 🗶

Do you have a car?

الجملة صحيحة

ق توضع علامة التعجب Exclamation mark (!) في نهاية الجملة الخبرية مثل النقطة لإظهار الدهشة والتعجب.

what a <u>pity</u>

الجملة خطأ 🗶

What a pity!

الجملة صحيحة 🗸

evision Writing Skills	
(3) Common grammatical mistakes	ı
استمرار في حياتنا نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر كما نفعل في	
	اللغة العربية:
 I'm often going to the club on Fridays. 	الجملة خطأ 🗶
• I often go to the club on Fridays.	الجملة صحيحة 🗸
يتكر ار (Adverbs of frequency) في مكانها (قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد فعل be):	🛭 إحرص على وضعٌ ظروف ال
always - usually - often - sometimes - neve	r
• I go usually to the cinema on holidays.	الجملة خطأ 🗶
• I usually go to the cinema on holidays.	الجملة صحيحة 🗸
• He always is early for school.	الجملة خطأ 🗶
He is always early for school.	الجملة صحيحة 🗸
فعل مضافًا له (ing):	🔁 ياتي دائمًا بعد حروف الجر
• I thanked Ali <u>for help</u> me.	الجملة خطا 🗶
I thanked Ali for helping me.	الجملة صحيحة
۱ حرف جر مثل (enjoy) حیث ان معناه یستمتع بـ:	🕰 بعض الأفعال لا يأتي بعدھ آ
• I <u>enjoyed by</u> the film.	الجملة خطأ 🗶
• I enjoyed the film.	الجملة صحيحة 🕢
ثل (information / news / equipment) ياتي بعدهم فعل لفاعل مفرد:	Transaction and the second
 The information you gave me were important. 	الجملة خطأ 🗶
The information you gave me was important.	الجملة صحيحة 🗸
) الأفعال الناقصة لا يأتي بعر آ
• We <u>must to eat</u> healthy food.	الجملة خطأ 🗶
We must eat healthy food.	الجملة صحيحة 🗸
	عدب (that) منستخدم (that)
 You should that study your lessons. 	الجملة خطأ 🗶
You should study your lessons. (The / The)	الجملة صحيحة 🗸
	🤇 علیك أن تفرق بین استخا أ
• It's = (It is + n / adj / V-ing)	
• It's (It is) my book. • It's (It is) good to be fit. • It's (It is) r	
• Its فير ملكية لغير العاقل	2.

الجملة خطأ [X]

الجملة خطأ [X]

الجملة صحيحة

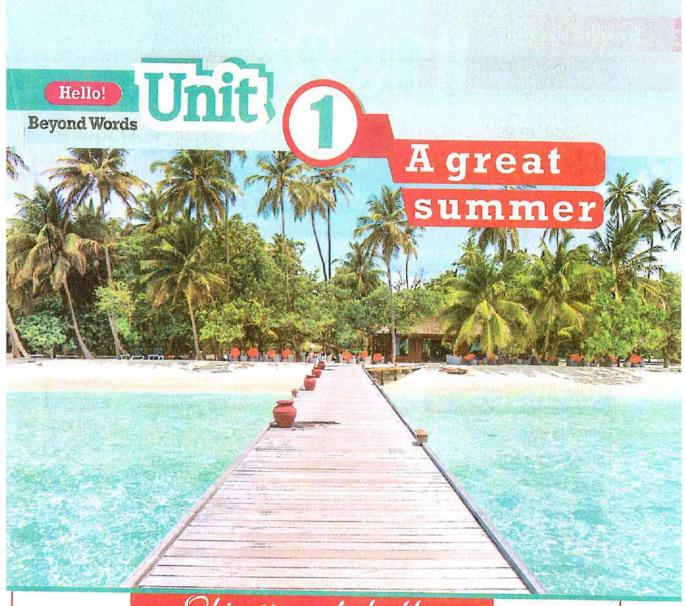
🧿 عليك أن تميز في الاستخدام بين ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول:

• I have a nice cat. It's tail is long.

• I have a nice cat. Its tail is long.

 \bullet Samir and $\underline{\textbf{me}}$ revised for the exam.

Samir and I revised for the exam.



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

A blog post about summer vacation activities, Forum posts about summer vacation activities; A quiz about how you spend your summer; Hana Goda: a biography

Writing:

An informal email to a friend **Listening**:

Understand conversations about summer activities

Speaking:

Play a guessing game about summer vacation activities; Ask and answer questions about how often you did something

Language:

The past simple tense; Adverbs of frequency with the past simple tense

· Sonit god a research is a second

selection in the selection of the selection in the selection of the selection in the select





Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

coach (n)	مدرب	neighbor (n)	جار
talented (adj)	موهوب	meeting (n)	اجتماع
tiring (adj)	مُتعِب/مُرهق	a helping hand	يد العون
tournament (n)	دورة رياضية	imagine (d)	يتخيل
AI (artificial intelligence)	الذكاء الاصطناعي	volunteer (ed) (n)	يتطوع/متطوع
vacation (n)	عطلة / إجازة	help out (ed)	عدلسي
workshop (n)	ورشة عمل	check (ed)	يِتأكد

Vocabulary			المفردات الاضافية
parents (n)		article (n)	اداة نكرة او تعريف
grandparents (n)	الاجداد	litter (n)	قمامة
local area	منطقة محلية	forum (n)	منتدى
computer software	برنامج على الكمبيوتر	chocolate bar wrapper	غلاف قالب الشيكولاتة
team (n)	فريق	poster (n)	ملصق
community garden	حديقة اجتماعية	recycling center	مركز اعادة تدوير
adult (n)	شخص بالغ / راشد	member (n)	عضو
Arabic (n)	اللغة العربية	project (n)	مشروع
surprised (adj)	مندهش	mistake (n)	خطأ
activities (n)	انشطة	decide (d)	يقرر
blog post	منشور فی مدونة	notice (d)	يلاحظ
partner (n)	زمیل/ شریك	repeat (ed)	یکرر /یردد
alphabet (n)	الحروف الأبجدية	kick (ed)	يركل
especially (adv)	خصوصا	score (d)	يسجل
leader (n)	عائد	wait (ed)	ينتظر
sports club	نادی ریاضی	pick up (ed)	يلتقط
What type?	مانوع؟	join (ed)	ينضم/يلتحق بـ
amazing (adj)	رائغ/مدهش	2 ~	

Expressions & Prepositions

	and the same of th	The same of the sa		
I trie	ed / did my best	بذلت قصارى جهدى	take part in	يشارك في
have	e a lot of fun	يستمتع كثيرا	at first	فى البداية
for c	while	لفترة قصيرة	for example	على سبيل المثال
ove	r the vacation	بمرور العطلة	on the street	في الشارع
	sure	يتأكد	wait for	ينتظر لـ
mak	e {sure posters	يعمل ملصقات	at the end of	في نهاية
peo	ple <mark>like</mark> me	اشخاص مثلى	nervous about	متوتر بشان
1	your homework	اعمل واجبك المنزلي	part of	جزء من
do	activities	يقوم بانشطة	look at	ينظر الى
(well	يحسن صنعًا/يؤدى جيدًا	instead of	بدلا من
wou	ıld like to + inf	یرید ان	help <mark>out</mark>	يساعد/يعاون
of c	ourse	بالطبع/بالتأكيد	join in	يشارك

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Antonym / O	المضاد pposite
quiet	هادئ	calm	noisy	مدغم
safe	آمن	secure / protected	dangerous	خطير
famous	مشهور	well known	unknown	غير معروف
fun	ممتع	interesting	boring	ممل
nervous	متوتر	worried	calm	هادئ
excited	متحمس	interested	bored	شاعر بالملل
strange	غريب	unusual	usual	علتده
possible	ممكن	probable	impossible	مستحيل
positive	ايجابي	confident	negative	سلبى
empty	فارغ	_	full	ممتلئ

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word	
im-	تعطنى عكس المعنى	impossible	
-ous	تحول الاسم الى صفة	nervous	
-ware	تشير الى البرامج المتعلقة بالكمبيوتر	software	
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	especially	
-er	تحول الفعل الى الفاعل	leader	

Conjugations of	Irregular Verbs		تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
make	يعمل / يصنع	made	made
take part	يشارك	took part	took part
teach	يعلم/ يُدَرُس	taught	taught
learn	يدرُس / يُدرُس	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
write	یکتب	wrote	written
tell	يخبر	told	told
win	يفوز	won	won
grow	ینمو/یزداد	grew	grown
find	تخت	found	found
set	تغرب الشمس	set	set
give up	يستسلم	gave up	given up
say	يقول	said	said

Language Notes



1) try + to + inf / try + v. ing

يمكن أن يأتي بعد الفعل (try) إما (to + inf) إو (v.ing) مع اختلاف في المعنى كما يلي

- يحاول أن try + to + inf
- Ex. We must try to prevent this from happening again
- (try + v. ing) يجرب عمل شئ لمعرفة النتيجة
- Ex. The coach asked me "Do you want to try playing with the team?"

2) tiring- tired / amazing - amazed

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تصف شعور من لديه الصفة

- Ex. Mr Ahmed is tired so he will go home.
- هنا ا/أحمد يشعر بالتعب
- Ex. The world is amazed by Mo Salah's goals. 2000 d

OFILE

- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف المسبب للصفة
- Ex. Watching much TV is tiring for your eyes.
 - هنا نصف مشاهدة التلفاز بانها مجهدة للعين
- Ex. Traveling around the world is amazing.

3) see / hear / watch

يأتي الفعل بعد هذه الافعال اما مضاف اليه (ing) أو (inf) معَ اختلاف في المعنى

اذا جاء بعدها مصدر الفعل فذلك يعني إن الفاعل شاهد أو سمع الحدث كاملا

أن الفاعل شاهد أو سمع جزء من الحدث Ex. I watched the children playing

Ex. The coach watched me kick the ball.

football.

اذا جاء بعدها الفعل مضاف اليه (ing) فذلك بعني

(4) in the end / at the end

In the end = Finally اخسا

غالبا يأتي بعدها (comma) ثم جملة كاملة (فاعل + فعل)

Ex. We worked hard, and in the end, we achieved our goal.

of) + noun في نهاية

مسا مث (of) اهعدب ربّاليا لبالذ

Ex. I pay the phone bill at the end of each month.

(5) No / not

لنفي الاسماء نستخدم (no) قبل الاسم Ex. I have no money. (not money) There were no mistakes.

لنفي الافعال نستخدم (not) مع اخر الافعال الناقصة أو المساعدة

Ex. I do not know him. They didn't have money.

Check on Language Notes

Choose	the correct	answer	from	a, b,	C	or	d:
CHOOSE	the concor	anono.		-, -,			

- 1. Try _____ butter instead of oil.
 - d. use
- b. to use
- c. using
- d. used
- 2. This job is really _____. I can't do it anymore.
 - a. tired

- b. amazed
- c. tiring
- d. interested

- 3. I watched my mom _____.
 - a. to cook
- b. cooks
- c. cooking
- d. cooked
- 4. There is a revision _____ the end of the unit.
 - a. in

b. at

- c. on
- d, of

- 5. We have ____ milk in the fridge.
 - a. no

- b. not
- c. don't
- d. never

0 0 0

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

Read and listen to Omar's blog post.

SB page 5



Hi, I'm Omar! This summer was great. I played football every day! At first, I played with some of my neighbors(1) in the street. Our street is quiet and very safe. We had a lot of fun and we liked to imagine(2) that we were famous(3) football players! Then, a new boy joined in. He told me about a football club in our area. One afternoon, I decided to go to the club.

There were lots of boys playing in two teams(4) and I watched them for a while. Then, the coach saw me and asked if I played football, too. "Do you want to try playing with the team?" he asked. Of course, I did! The coach watched me kick(5) the ball and said I was a talented(6) football player. He asked me to join the team. For the next six weeks, I played with my neighbors in the morning and then with the team at the football club in the afternoon. It was very tiring(7), but really fun! At the end of the summer, we took part in a tournament(8). I was nervous(9) about it, but excited. I tried my best and scored three goals! Our team won the tournament. It was an amazing end to the summer!



ا- جيران ٦- يتخيل ۳-مشهور ٤- فرق ٥-پرکل ٦-موهوب ۷-متعب ٨- دورة رياضية 9-متوتر

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل) 1. The passage is about Omar's.....vacation.

a. winter

b. fall

c. summer

يتحدث النص عن

d. spring

2. Infer from the text Omar's favorite sport.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

استنتج من النص رياضة عمر المفضلة

لخص الفقرة الاولى في جملة

لقد استمتعنا كثيرًا.

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)

- 1. We had a lot of fun.
- 2. There were lots of boys playing in two teams.

- كان هناك الكثير من الأولاد يلعبون في فريقين.
- 3. At the end of the summer, we took part in a tournament.

في نهاية الصيف، شاركنا في بطولة.

4. I tried my best and scored three goals! Our team won the tournament

. بذلت قصارى جهدى وسجلت ثلاثة أهداف! فاز فريقنا بالبطول<mark>ة.</mark>

3. Omar spent his summer playing football with his neighbors and later joined a football club in his area.

2. Football

T. c. summer

Answers:

Guessing the meaning of new words

When you find a new word, first try to understand what type of word it is. Does it describe a person or a thing (a noun), or an action (a verb)? Other words in the sentence can help you. For example, before a noun we usually find an article (a tournament, the game), an adjective (new friends) or a verb (I played football). You can use the meaning of these other words to help you find the meaning of the new word.

تخمين معنى كلمة حديدة

أذا وجدت كلمة جديدة في نص حاول تخمينها كما يلي: اولا حاول معرفة نوع الكلمة (اسم/فعل/صفة.....)

Parts of speech انواع الكلام

1 - Nouns [Ahmed / Reading]	اسماء	5 - Adverbs [slowly]	احوال او ظروف
2 - Verbs [go - have]	افعال	6 - Pronouns [he / him / his]	ضمائر
3- Adjectives [sad - happy]	صفات	7 - Prepositions [in - on - at]	حروف الجر
4- Conjunctions [and - but]	كلمات الربط	8 - Interjection [Wow / Oh]	كلمات التعجب

اذا كانت الكلمة تشير الى شخص او شئ فهى اسم. واذا كانت تعبر عن حدوث شئ فهى فعل. وهناك كلمات فى النص تساعدك على معرفة نوع الكلمة حيث يسبق الاسماء اداة نكرة a/an او معرفة the ويمكن ان ياتى قبل الاسم صفة أه فعل



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali is my <u>friend</u> . The v	word friend is a/an		
a. verb	b. noun	c. adjective	d. adverb
2. Adel listened to the so	ong <u>happily</u> . The wor	d happily is a/an	
a. noun	b. adverb	c. adjective	d. verb
3. He is <u>at</u> school now. آ		samper and the country	
	b. preposition	o: verbi son sur -	d. noun
4. Reading is my hobby	. Reading here is a/a	nel ad telese per tre	
a. verb	b. noun	c. pronoun	d. adverb
5. This is my book and the	nat is <u>yours</u> . Yours h	ere is a/an	
a. verb	b. adjective	c. adverb	d. pronoun



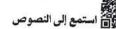
Reading



SB Page (6)



SB Page (6)



cuball-

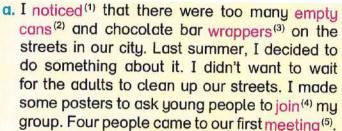
الشيكولاتة ٤-ينضم

٥-احتماع

٦-قمامة

٢- علب صفيح فارغة

٣- اغلفة قوالب



We picked up litter⁽⁶⁾ from one part of the city, put it in bags, and took it to the recycling center⁽⁷⁾. The week after that, eight people came and then after that there were twelve of us. The group grew and grew over the vacation⁽⁸⁾ and now it has twenty-four members.

Elsa, Salzburg, Austria (9)

b. Last summer, I did something really fun. I took part⁽¹⁰⁾ in a project where young people write stories using AI⁽¹¹⁾. Because computers write them, we had to check⁽¹²⁾ to make sure that there were no mistakes in them. Before



V- مركز اعادة التدوير A- عطلة A- النمسا اا-الذكاء الاصطناعی اا-یراجع اا-يد العون المملكة الشمس المملكة المتحدة المملكة المتحدة الملادية المدادية الحدية

٠٦- خصوصا

I started, I didn't know that AI can write really good stories. You imagine that only people can write stories, but AI can give a helping hand (13). I was surprised! Most of the stories I read were fine, but sometimes I found something strange in them. For example, there was one story where the sun never sets (14). Of course that's not possible, so I changed that part of the story.

Leon, Manchester, UK (15)

c. Two months ago, I started helping out at a project in my city. In this project young people like me help adults who can't read and write Arabic. My partner⁽¹⁶⁾ was Mrs Azza and she was very nice. First, we looked at the alphabet⁽¹⁷⁾ together. I said the sound for each letter and Mrs Azza repeated⁽¹⁸⁾ it. Sometimes, she nearly gave up, but then I said things like: "You're doing really well! Don't stop now." It was fun to be a teacher instead of⁽¹⁹⁾ a student, especially⁽²⁰⁾ when I asked her: "Did you do your homework this week?", or "What did you learn yesterday?"



It was great to help Mrs Azza learn something new.

Gameela, Luxor, Egypt

Exercises on Vocabulary

Compl	lete the follow	wing dialogue:						
Ahmed is	s talking to O	sman about the	summer activities					
Ahmed	: Hi Osman! Which activities did you do last summer?							
Osman	: 10	: 1						
Ahmed		our team win?						
Osman	: 2							
Ahmed	: What else	did you do?						
Osman	: 🔞			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
Ahmed				ng the community?				
Osman	# ###################################							
Ahmed				?				
Osman		I enjoyed the vac						
/_		answer from a,						
Choos	e the correct	unswer nom u,	b, c or a.					
		Longman & S	SB Exercises					
1. The coa	ch admired the	e new player, who	o was very					
a. appe	ared	b. talented	c. ordinary	d. bad				
2. It was a	'an (day, so I needed	some rest.					
		3.5	c. easy					
3. What ac	tivities do you	like to	during the summer	vacation?				
a. make			c. spend					
4. In the er	nd, I had to	sure there	e were no mistakes	t.				
a. do			c. make					
			; I enjoyed it very m					
			c. excited					
			chocolate bar					
street,	so we had to a	lean it: 115	alo entito ha					
a. runne	ers saint	b. wrappers	c. winners , so I had some res	d. walkers				
7	the end of th							
a. Of			c. In					
8. You mus	stn't play in the							
a. easy		b. unwanted	c. near	d. safe and some				
9. I'd like _	a nev	w suit for my birth	iday party.	A stand planted				
a. buyir	ng	b. to buy	c. buy	d. to buying				

Bit by Bit Exercises

10.	I trained hard and I wo a. dentist	on the tournament w	rith the help of m	y
11.	Teaching is a verya. easy	job. A teacher h	nas to work at leas	t eight hours a day.
12.	Our team will take par	t in theI h	nope we will play	well.
40	a. tour			
13.	My parents gave me a			
2 2 1	a. ear			
14.	I can't life wi	ithout doctors. They	help us to live h	ealthily.
	a. imagine	b. repeat	c. pick	d. kick
15.	My dad to we money.			
	 a. volunteered 	b. hated	c. scored	d. kicked
16.	A: Where did you sper	nd the last summer	? B : I	went to Alex.
	a. tournament	b. vacation	c. exam	d. match
	Children should do diffe have fun as well.	erent in th	ne summer to lea	rn new things and
	a. problems			
18.	The manager has a a. swimming	b. meeting	kers to solve the c. reading	ir problems. d. playing
19.	Ou r \dots are the μ			
	a. neighbors	b. teachers	c. relatives	d. friends
20. ا	Mohammed Salah	32 goals in o	ne season.	
	d. scored	b. tried	c. taught	d. wrote
21. \	When Amira revised the	e exam, she	three mistake	S
	a. won			
	The opposite of the wor			
	a. calm			d bored
	The prefix giv			
		b. im-	c. ir-	d. il-
			17	u. IC
		Expressions & pro	epositions	
24. I	go to the park on Frida	ay and I have a lot o	of	
			c. fun	d. fins
25. V	When I meet strange pe	eople I feel	_ It's annoying.	
	a. nervous	o. happy	c. good	d. fine
26. F	łamza is fast so he will	takein the	ne running race.	
	a. piece	o. place	c. part	d. club
	le tried hisb		8	
	a. best	o. better	c. good	d. well

28. I waited _____ my friend but he didn't come. a. to b. for d. from 29. I decided to join a sports club _____ of staying at home and watching TV. d. interested b. excited c. instead a. repeated 30. I picked _____litters to make the street clean. d on b. up c. after d. with Language قواعد لغوية The past simple 1-The past simple tense زمن الماضي اليسيط التكوين Form التصريف الثاني للفعل + فاعل (كل الضمائر) Subject 📆 الأفعال المنتظمة: هي الأفعال التي يتكون منها الماضي بإضافة (ed) لآخر الفعل worked walk → walked work -إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) نضيف (d) فقط للفعل like → liked dance -> danced - إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حرف ساكن ثم حرف y نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied) studu -> studied carry >> carried – إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حرف متحرك ثم حرف y نضيف (ed) بدون أي تغيير play >> played enjoyed enjou - يضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الأفعال عند إضافة (ed) control -> controlled stop >> stopped 📆 الأفعال غير المنتظمة هي الأفعال التي لايضاف لها ed في الماضي وتحفظ كما هي do -> did go -> went eat 🗪 ate am / is > was have / has -> had are were Usage الاستخدام • يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل تم وانتهي في الماضي: Ex. Two months ago, I started helping out at a project in my city. • يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط لسرد أحداث وقعت وانتهت في الماضي:

Ex. One day I saw a bird on a tree. It had many colors.

Affirmative الاثنات

Ex. We climbed a mountain yesterday. Ex. I played games last week.

Negative النفي

بشكل عام يحول الماض البسيط للنفي بإستخدام (didn't) مع تحويل الفعل للمصدر.

Ex. I didn't visit my family.

Ex. He didn't eat fish.

• يمكن استخدم (never) بدلاً من (didn't) ويأتي بعدها الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

Ex. Khalid never went to Aswan.

Question Question

السؤال بـ " هل...؟"

Ex. Did she ride her bike?

- Yes, she did.

- No, she didn't.

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

السؤال بكلمة استفهام (-Wh)

Ex. A: What did you do yesterday?

B: We went to the park.

لاحظ في السؤال بمعنى لما لم تفعل...؟ نستخدم didn't في السؤال

Ex. Why didn't you come yesterday?



ا. يمكن استخدام فعل (be) في السؤال كفعل أساسي باستخدام (was / were) كالتالي:

يستخدم فعل (be) للسؤال عن اسم أو صفة ، ونستخدم (Did) للسؤال عن فعل

Ex. Was Hany a doctor?

- No, they weren't.

Ex. Were they late? Yes, they were.

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

be	present	simple past
I gallin	am	was
he - she - it	is is	was
you - we - they	are ുക	were

٢- لاحظ هناك السماء تيدو في معناها جمع لكنها تأخذ فعل مفرد: عبي ٨٧٥ من ١٠٠٠٠٠٠

The news / information / advice → was

". نستخدم فعل (have) في السؤال كفعل أساسي ونسأل عنه بـ (did):

Ex. Did you have a bike in the past? - Yes, I did. - No. I didn't.

كلمة (and) تربط جملتين في نفس الزمن (ماضي بسيط).

Ex. I went to the market and bought many things.

ه. ماضی could ← can

Ex. I could swim when I was young.

2- Past time expressions

- التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضي

- تستخدم الكلمات الزمنية التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث الفعل:

yesterday	أمس	once	ذات مرة
in the past	في الماضي	ago	منذ (يأتي قبلها فترة زمنية)
in (2010)	فی عام (۲۰۱۰)	this morning	هذاالصباح
last	السابق		

Ex. I visited the museum last night.

Ex. We bought a car four years ago.

Exercises on Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Longman & SB Exercises

estion, but Kamal		
b. do	c. did	d. does
iends birthday party b	ecause I was ill.	
b. don't go	c. went	d. go
hing to help his friend	s, so they were a	ngry with him. 🏻 🌉
b. does	c. didn't do	d. did
to help me when I w	as in trouble, so	I was sad.
b. offers	c. didn't offer	d. doesn't offer
ub? Because I was to	oo busy.	
b. you went	c. did you go	d. didn't you go
en I reached Aswan.		
b. is	c. will be	d. was
helping out	t at a project in m	y city. SB
b. started	c. starts	d. starting
nd for each letter and	Mrs Azza repeat	ed it.
b. saying	c. says	d. said
yesterday?		SB
b. doing	c. do	d. does
untrue, I	couldn't believe i	t. wo by the 🎉
b. were	c. are	d. has
	b. do iends birthday party b b. don't go hing to help his friend b. does to help me when I w b. offers ub? Because I was to b. you went en I reached Aswan. b. is helping out b. started nd for each letter and b. saying yesterday? b. doing untrue, I	iends birthday party because I was ill. b. don't go c. went hing to help his friends, so they were a b. does c. didn't do to help me when I was in trouble, so i b. offers c. didn't offer ub? Because I was too busy. b. you went c. did you go en I reached Aswan. b. is c. will be helping out at a project in m b. started c. starts nd for each letter and Mrs Azza repeat b. saying c. says yesterday? b. doing c. do untrue, I couldn't believe in

Bit by Bit Exercises

11.	Ita grea	game and we won t	he cup	
				1000
		b. were		
12.	I nevers	ushi but my brother o	ite it many times.	
40	a. try	b. tried	c. tries	d. trying
13.	I sad who	en I lost my favorite p	oen.	
	a. feel	b. feels	c. feeling	d. felt
14.	you wat	ch the match yesterd	ay?	
P6/440	a. Did	b. Do	c. Does	d. Are
15.	How old	you in 2022?		
	a. was	b. did	c. were	d. are
16.	I my hon	nework and went to b	ed.	
	a. do			d. did
	Two months ago, she			
- 47	a. starts	b. started	c. start	d. starting
18.	Mr Ahmed			
	a. teaches	b. teach	c. taught	d. teaching
19.	When I was young I			
	a. learn	b. learns	c. learning	d. learned
20.	you answ	er the exam yesterd	ay?	
	a. Can	b. Was	c. Could	d. Will
21.	Doaa a fo	antastic weekend last	t month.	
	a. has	b. have	c. having	d. had
22.	What time did you arr	ve?		
	a. now	b. tomorrow	c. yesterday	d. ago
23.	Ahmed: Did you have	a tablet? Osama: Ye	es, I	one.
	a. had	b. did	c. was	d. has
24.	A: you red	dy for yesterday's ex	am? B: Yes, sure	9.
	a. Were	b. Did	c Could	d Do
25.	I buy any	thing from this shop l	ast night.	
	a. don't	b. didn't	c. won't	d. wasn't
26.	What time		day?	
	a. does	b. do	c. is although or	d. did
10			والانشطة التي تحب ال	
1	Read and correct:		× 9 = 1	
	managa especiales e	Langman 9 SD E		
		Longman & SB E	Xercises	
1. V	Vho did you	(went) to the beac	h with?	
	alia (hurr			ken.
	Vhich hobby			

4. Hoda (follows) the coach's instr	ructions, so she didn't win the game.				
5. Did you (knew who win) the match yesterday?					
6. The pharaohs (build) the p	yramids.				
7. I (have) to hurry because I	was late for school.				
8. Tamer (caught) the train be	ecause he got up late.				
9. There (were) no flour left to	o make cakes.				
Bit by Bit	Exercises				
0. Last summer, I(do) many	activities.				
1. First, we(say) the alphabe					
2. What did you (did) yesterd	lay?				
3. Fatma (reads) a story and	she liked it.				
4. I met my friend Amr two days	(age).				
5. I(can) ride a bike when I	was five.				
6. Did you have a bike? Yes. I	(did) one.				
7. My uncle bought a car (to	morrow).				
8. I last (go) to the Zoo in 20	10.				
On Spe	aking				
	SECURIORIS CONTRACTOR				
Ask and answer questions about y					
	• السؤال والجواب عن العطلة الصيفية:				
Question	Answer				
	- I helped my grandma in her				
- What did you do in the summer	garden.				
vacation?					
Think y	لقد زر عنا الكثير من الزهور.				
- What activities do you like to do?	- I play in tournaments and I help				
ما هي الأنشطة التي تحب القيام بها؟	out at my family's workshop				
	ألعب في البطولات وأساعد في ورشة عمل عائلتي.				
- Which activities would you like to	- I would like to write stories using				
do?	AI.				

ما هي الأنشطة التي تر غب في القيام بها؟

أريد أن أكتب قصصًا باستخدام الذكاء الاصطناعي.

Ceneral Exercises (a) on Lessons 1& 2

Complete the following dialogue:

Karma and Hana	are talking about h	nelping in the con	nmunity garden.
Karma: Hi Hana! Wh	at did you do yeste	rday?	
Hana : 🕧			
Karma: How did you			
Hana : 2			
			?
Hana : We took the			
Karma : 🙆			?
Hana : I went there			
Karma: Can I come v	vith the next time?		
Hana : 6			
	te the text with wo		
tourne	ament - teach - act	ivities - great - ta	ught
It's important to do	something useful in	n the summer vac	ation. My last summer
vacation was 🗿	I did many	2 I	wrote stories using AI.
I 🔞adults	to read and write	Arabic. I played in	a 🙆 and I
won a medal.			
Choose the correct	t answer from a, b	o, c or d:	
1. I joined a	to learn music. I c	an play the piano i	now.
a. shop	10 Day 795	c. garage	
2. A: you ho		at would you do?	3: I would help the poor.
a. Imagine	b. Score	c. Volunteer	d. Repeat
3. People who are	F20 100 10 10 10 10		
a. planted4. My brother uses	b. talented	c. excited	d. funny
a. PM	b. AM	c. AI	d. BC
5. My brother is a footbo			
a. tower	b. train	c. tournament	

6. Many people think	that Messi is a	player. He ho	as many skills.
a. surprised	b. funny	c. talented	d. strange
7. I never	climbing a mour	ntain when I was your	ng.
a. try	b. tries	c. tried	d. trying
8. A: What did you	for lun	ch? B: I ate pasta an	d chicken.
a. has	b. had	c. having	d. have
9. He didn't stay at ho	me but he	swimming.	
a. went	b. go	c. goes	d. going
10 you ho	ippy when you go	ot the prize?	
a. Did	b. Do	c. Are	d. Were
11. In the past, they	horses	and camels to travel	
a. used	b. use	c. uses	d. using
12. People from our co			
		c. plants	
Complete the se	ntences with co	rrect form of the wo	rd(s) in brackets:
4. Marantana and Maria		(runice SB
My partner was Mi			ry filce.
2. Most of the stories			92
3. Where did you			
4. The game			
5. Our teacher last ye			
6 (Do) y			
Write a paragrap	oh of (80-90) wo	rds on:	
		The state of the state of	(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)
	"Your sur	mmer vacation"	
		TACT TOWER I	
	or March 1	adom mb91%	
		Optismow	
	الفقرة الانشائية	ابة عن الأسبِّلة الآتية كتابة ا	- يمكنك من خلال الاحا
- What activities		WI	nat else did you do?
- Did you try sor	VOLUITA CE	91006 0	
	la erb uerlt earn:	بارات الاتية بارات الاتية	بحاا رماعختسا طنكمي –
- I played in a bi	g tournament		Petroid 9
		garden	. Pasunadoid glately
		taught some adults	Property of the Party of the Pa
The contract of the contract o	and the second s	Charles and the contract of the contract of	5. My brother is a loots



Key Vocabulary

Key Vocabul	ary			المفردات الرئيسية
وتی catacombs (n)	سراديب وغرف دفن الم	unfortunately (adv)		لسوء الحظ
temple (n)	معبد	smart (adj)		ذکی / بارع
obelisk (n)	مسلة	monument (n)		أثر تاريخي
statue (n)	تمثال	language (n)		قخا
active (adj)	نشيط	identify (ied)		يحدد
friendly (adj)	ودود	present (ed)	1 - k	یقدم/ یعرض
problem solving (n)	حل المشكلات	organize (d)		ينظم
helpful (adj)	متعاون	recycle (d)	15.9	یعید تدویر
archaeologist (n)	آثار مالد	edit (ed)		یعدل/یحرر
effect (n)	تاثير	bury (ied)		يدفن
information (n)	معلومات	pray (ed)		يصلى / يتعبد
solution (n)	حل	lazy (adj)		کسول

Vocabulary			المفردات الاضافية
model (n)	نموذج	care (n) (v.d)	` رعاية / عناية / يعتنى
housework (n)	اعمال منزلية	repairs (n)	اصلاحات
underground tunnels	انفاق تحت الارض	choice (n)	اختيار
the dead	الموتى	skill (n)	مهارة
reason (n)	سبب	daily life	الحياة اليومية
bank (n)	ضفة النهر	steps (n)	خطوات
wall (n)	حائط/جدار	flow chart	رسم بیانی
religion (n)	دین س	online (adj)	عبر/ على الانترنت
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا	definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد
how often?	کم مرة؟	dish (n)	طبق

Lessons 3&4

weather (n)	طقس	solve (d)	يحل
organized (adj)	منظم	discuss (ed)	يناقش
tourist (n)	سائح	explain (ed)	يشرح
floor (n)	ارضية الحجرة	collect (ed)	يجمع
mention (ed)	يذكر	protect (ed)	يحمى
		0 0	

Definitions

تمثال statue	model of a person, animal, or object, sometimes made of stone
مسلة مسلة	tall stone monument with a top that is usually in the shape of a pyramid
سراديب وغرف دفن الموتى catacombs	underground tunnels and rooms for burying the dead
temple aico	place where people come together to pray

Expressions & Prepositions

go online	يدخل على الانترنت	how about sports	ماذا عن الرياضة
that's a pity	ياللأسف	sounds great / useful	بدو رائع/مفید
give a try	حاول	cut away	بتآكل / يقلص
give a reason for	يعطى سبب لـ	four times a week	ربع مرات في الاسبوع
on the west bank	في الضفة الغربية (للنهر)	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
think about	يفكر في	get up	يستيقظ
important for/to	هام لـ	solution for	حل لـ
<mark>make</mark> it a better plac	يجعلها مكان افضل ce	look after	یعتنی بـ
tell about	يخبر عن	in a shape of	
bad for	ضار لـ	in the holidays	في ايام الاجازات
do sports	يمارس رياضة		. ,

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف Antonym / Oppos		المضاد oosite
ancient	قديم/اثرى	old	modern / new	حدیث/جدید
interesting	شيق	exciting	boring	ممل
useful	مفید	helpful	useless	غیر مفید
active	نشيط	energetic	lazy	كسول
friendly	ودود	kind	unfriendly	غير ودود
helpful	متعاون/مفيد	useful	helpless	غير متعاون
smart	ذکی/بارع	clever	stupid	ربذ
near	قريب	close to	far	عيد

Prefixes & Suffixes الكلمات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-tion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	information
-ed	تحول الفعل الى صفة	organized
day see-ful grave	تحول الفعل او الاسم الى صفة ـ بــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	helpful
akajo (-ty wes	ين منجدي. تحول الصفة الى حال	slowly
	0 0 00	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	and the solutions of	تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة
Present	Past simple	Past Participle
understand يفهم	understood	understood
give يعطى	gave	given
cut away يتآكل/يقلص	cut away	cut away
think يفكر	thought	thought
leave یادر	left	left

Language Notes

`ملاحظات لغوية ``

1) The + adjective

عند وضع (the) قبل الصفة فإننا نشير الى فئة او مجموعة معينة ... الفقراء The poor الاغنياء the rich الموتى the dead الموتى Ex.We should help the poor.

2) care / repair / present

- care قيانه/مناية
- Ex. Some parents don't care what their kids do.
 - Old people need special medical care.

بعض الكلمات تعتبر افعال و اسماء في نفس الوقت

- اصلاحات repairs / يصلح
 - Ex. I want to repair my car.
 - They are doing some repairs at the school.
- موجود present (v. ed) موجود present (n) هدية present (ddj) موجود
- Ex. I wanted to present my friend and give him a present but he wasn't present.

3) daily / everyday / every day

كلمة (everyday) صفة ومعناها يومي وتأتي قبل الاسم:

Ex. Playing chess is important in my everyday life.

كلمة (every day) ظرف وتعنى كل يوم وغالبًا تكون آخر الجملة:

Ex. I practice English every day. (not everyday)

لاحظ أن كلمة (daily) تساوى الأثنين في المعنى حسب السياق:

- Ex. Doing exercise is my daily routine.
 - I do exercise daily.

in the holidays / on holiday

- in the holidays في انام الاجازة
- Ex. I like to play video games in the holidays.
- on holiday في اجازة
- Ex. We missed Mr Osman when he was on holiday.

Unit 1 A great summer

Check on Language Notes 🗸



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The ancient Egyptians buried _____ in pyramids.
 - a. dead
- b. death
- c die
- d. the dead
- 2. You should take ____ when you cross the road.
 - a. careful
- b. careless
- c. care
- d. caring
- 3. It's my ____ routine to wake up at 6 o'clock.
 - a. day

- b. daily
- c. every day
- d. dairy
- 4. What do you like to do _____ the holidays?
 - a. on

b. in

- c. at
- d. from



Reading



SB Page (8)

Read the information about an ancient building in Egypt





The Temple⁽¹⁾ of Edfu is an Ancient⁽²⁾ Egyptian temple in the town of Edfu. The town is on the west bank⁽³⁾ of the River Nile between Luxor and Aswan. The temple is about 2250 years old. It is



ا- معبد ۲- قدیم

٣- الضفة الغربية

٤- جدران/حوائط

ە-لغة 7-دىن

important for understanding life in Ancient Egypt because the writing on its walls⁽⁴⁾ gives us very interesting and useful information about language⁽⁵⁾ and religion⁽⁶⁾



SB Page (8)

over 2000 years ago, and the

Hadaya: What did you do in the summer holiday, Mariam?

Mariam: I visited my aunt and uncle in Edfu. It's near to Aswan and there's a beautiful temple(1) there.

Hadaya: Oh, yeah. It's an ancient temple, isn't it?

Mariam: Yes, and it tells us a lot about what life was like in Ancient Egypt, so it's a special place. Unfortunately⁽²⁾, there are some problems⁽³⁾ at the Temple of Edfu. The weather⁽⁴⁾ in Egypt is bad for the stone walls. The wind and sand very slowly cut the stone away⁽⁵⁾.

٦. لسوء الحظ

۳. مشاکل ٤. طقس

ه. تقلص الاحجار

Hadaya: That's too bad. Do lots of tourists come to the temple?

Mariam: Yes, and all those people's feet are bad for the stone, too.

Hadaya: Is anyone doing anything to protect(6) the building?

Mariam: Yes. Volunteers(7) work with archaeologists(8) on the buildings. Some of them are students like us who help in the summer holidays. They can stop these bad effects(9) on some buildings, but there isn't enough time

or people to help all the buildings at the same time.

Hadaya: That's a pity(10). And the buildings are so old, aren't they?

Mariam: Yes, because they're very old, they need lots of care(11) and repairs(12).



ا. عطلة

٦. مېنې ٣. نشيط

ع. بالتاكيد

ه. مشروع

٦. يجمع القمامة

۷. یعید تدویر

٨. بيدوراثما

9. على الانترنت

ا. يحرر/يعدل

SB Page (10)

Basel : So, Younis, what's your answer to the first question: did you help other people in the summer vacation(1)?

Younis: Yes, of course I did. I helped out at my parents' restaurant. I cleaned the dishes and cleaned the floor in the restaurant at the end of the day. I often went to other shops to buy things that my parents needed, too. I would say I often helped my family and friends in the

summer vacation.

Basel: Great, so you helped your family and you learned how

to work in a restaurant.

Younis: Yes, that's right.

Basel : How about sports? How often did you do sports?

Younis: Every day, I think. I always played sport in the summer vacation. I love

playing football with my friends near my building(2).

Basel: So, you were active(3) in the holidays?

Younis: Yes, definitely(4).

Basel : The next question is: How often did you do something to help your community?

Younis: I often volunteered to help at a project(5) in my community. People walk around the streets, collect(6) litter and recycle(7) it. Then our streets are

cleaner and we can use the paper and plastic again.

Basel: Sounds great(8). Can I join in too? I never did anything in my community in

the holidays, but I want to start helping out.

Younis: Of course, Basel.

Basel: The last question is: did you learn anything interesting online(9) this

summer? How often did you go online?

Younis: I sometimes went online at home in the evening. I was usually tired in the evening. But sometimes I watched some videos about how to make

videos with a phone and how to edit(10) the videos so they look good.

Basel: That sounds useful.

Younis: Yes, I want to give it a try myself now.

Exercises on Vocabulary

				4
(1)	Complete	the following	dialogue:	

Hamza is talking to Islam about visiting ancient places.					
Hamza	: Hi Islam! Did you visit ancient places last summer?				
Islam	: 0				
Hamza	: What place	es did you visit?			
Islam	: @				
Hamza	: 🔞	·		?	
Islam	: The temple	e of Edfu is in Aswar	1.		
Hamza	: 🕢			?	
Islam	: It's about 2	2,250 years old.			
Hamza	: Can we vis	sit it together?			
Islam	: 6	·			
(A) Choose	e the correc	t answer from a, b,	c or d:		
Cilou	se the conec		The same of the sa		
		Longman Ex			
1	_ are underg	round tunnels and ro			
a. Wal		b. Statues		d. Catacombs	
2. What co	ın we do to	the environr	nent?		
		b. connect			
3. Egyptia	nhe	ove discovered histo	ric objects in the	tomb.	
a. arch	aeologists	b. psychologists	c. chemists	d. pilots	
4. Edfu is	on the west	of the Rive	r Nile between Lu	uxor and Aswan.	
a. coas	st	b. bank	c. wall	d. beach	
5. I some	times	up late in the sum	mer vacation.		
a. get		b. stand	c. hurry	d. go	
6. Walking is my daily sport. 'Daily' here can be replaced with "".					
a. rare		b. usually	c. everyday	d. every day	
7. A/An	is a ta	ll monument with a to	p that is usually in	the shape of a pyramid.	
a. tom	b	b. obelisk	c. funnel	d. tunnel	
8. Rami is	so	he never does any	activity.		
a. lazy		b. active	c. liked	d. early	

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. THE ADU SIIII	bel is made of s	tone and it is ver	y big.
	b. beach		
10. Ziad is	He always helps his	friends.	
	b. selfish		d. negative
11. The Sphinx of	and the Pyramids are very	oldin I	Egupt.
	b. monuments		d. homes
12. Recycling litte	er is the best for	the problem of p	
a. weather	b. building	c. solution	d. reason
13. A good mana	ger knows how to	problems.	
a. make			d. solve
14. The opposite	of the word "active" is		
a. funny	b. excited	c. lazy	d. useful
15. Ancient Egypt	ians in temples	a long time ago.	
a. prayed	b. acted	c. cycled	d. organized
16. This student is	s very He answe	red all the questi	ons correctlu.
a. lazy	b. stupid	c. smart	d. useless
17. We love our to	eacher because he is	and helpful	CROS (12)
	b. friendly		
18. Lots of	visit Egypt every year b	ecause of its fine	weather.
c. volunteers	b. temples	c. tourists	d. monuments
19. There is a lot of	of interesting and useful	on the w	alls of the temple abou
the ancient Eg	yptians.		
a. weather	b. information	c. repairs	d. towers
20. Solving proble	ms is a very important	that you sl	nould improve
a. care	b. present	c. chart	d. skill
21. Mr Osman will	his ideas to the	manager at next	week's meeting.
a. win	b. present	c. notice	d. train
22. The food was a	delicious,allacevaerit was t	too spicy for me.	
a. luckily	b. unknown	c. unfortunate	ly d. good
23. What is the	of watching too mu	ch TV?	
a. effect		c. collect	d. ticket
24. Can you	this video to make it sl	norter?	
a. cycle	b. edit	c. burn	d. delete
25plas	tic and litter is good for the		
a. Throwing	b. Burning	c. Recycling	d. Reading

Expression and Prepositions

- 26. The moon is in the _____of a circle.
 - d. size

- b. shape
- c. color
- d. time
- 27. The two runners finished the race _____ the same time.
 - g. on

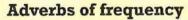
- b. for
- c. at
- d. of
- 28. When my parents go out, I look ____ my little sister.
 - a. after
- b. at

- c. for
- d. up
- 29. Hossam was doing a school project so he went _____ for more information.
 - a. line

- b. offline
- c. online d. alone
- 30. Many animals and plants live on the _____ of the River Nile.
 - a. banks
- b. flats
- c. gates
- d. buildings



Language



ظروف التكرار

- نستخدم ظروف التكرار لنوضح متى وكم مرة قام الشخص بفعل شئ.
- يمكن ان نستخدم ظروف التكرار في المضارع والماضي وندرس في هذا الدرس الماضي البسيط
- تنقسم ظروف التكرار إلى ظروف محددة (Definite) أي أنها تحدد عدد مرات حدوث الفعل مثل: /once

وهناك ظروف غير محددة (Indefinite) وهي لا تحدد عدد المرات ولكن توضح نسبة حدوث الفعل من:

Always (100%) — Never (0%)

Indefinite	محدد	پيد Definite	محددة
always	THE LAND OF THE OWNERS	once دائما	مرة
usually	= = = E	قعلد twice	مرتين
often	care i	بانذ three times	ثلاث مرات
sometimes		every day / week احيان	کل یوم/اسبوع
rarely	2	نادرا	
never		ابدا	

always \rightarrow usually \rightarrow often \rightarrow sometimes \rightarrow occasionally \rightarrow hardly ever/rarely \rightarrow never (100%) (80%) (70%) (50%) (30%) (10%)

100%	always	I always looked after my little sister. اعتنیت دائما باختی الصغیرة (فعلت ذلك دائما).
90%	usually	I was usually tired in the evening. كنت عادة اشعر بالتعب في المساء. (في اوقات كثيرة وليس طوال الوقت)
70%	often	I didn't <mark>often</mark> watch television. کنت غالبااشاهد التلفاز. (في اغلب الوقت)
50%	sometimes	I sometimes got up early in the summer vacation. کنت احیاناً استیقظ مبکرا فی عطلة الصیف (نصف ایام الاسبوع)
30%)	occasionally	I occasionally ate junk food. تناولت اكلات سريعة بين الحين والاخر (مرات قليلة)
10%	hardly ever/ rarely	I hardly ever traveled abroad. نادراما سافرت للخارج. (نادرا ما حدث ذلك)
0%	never	I never visited the Pyramids. لم ازر الاهرام ابدا (لم افعل ذلك ولا مرة)

بي من المُقالِ الله على الله

Verb to be —→ Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs of frequency —→ Other verbs

- He was usually lazy but he is active now.
- He always came first in the running race.

How often/ How many times + did + فاعل + inf. ؟ فعل في المصدر - نستخدم ظروف التكرار للاجابة عن سؤال (How often? / How many times?)

• How often did you leave your town?

Not often. I usually stayed in my town in the summer vacation

– لاحظ في النفي نضع (didn't) قبل ظروف التكرار

The kids didn't usually go to bed early.

Exercises on Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Longman & SB Exercises

1. Rehamfail	ed during her school	years; she alway	s got full marks.
a. ever	b. usually	c. always	d. never
2. How times	did you go to the clul	o last month?	
a. often	b. many	c. much	d. every
3. Iinvited my	friends to study with n	ne at home; I did t	his on some occasions,
but not always.	9		
a. usually	b. sometimes	c. never	d. ever
4. I my home	work before I went to	bed; it was my ho	abit to do it day by day.
a. always do	b. usually did	c. never did	d. didn't do
5. Nazeeh hardly	arrived late; he a	lways came on ti	ime.
a. never	b. ever	c. usually	d. every
6. I rarely played tennis	when I was young. "	Rarely" means	
a. always	d. never	c. not often	d. usually
7. I helped wi	th the housework. I d	id that every day	. SB
a. never	b. always	c. sometimes	d. don't
	Bit by Bit Exe	ercises	
8. Mr Ahmed didn't trav	el abroad. He	left Egypt.	
a. always	b. usually	c. sometimes	d. never
9. Adhamlate		vas young.	
a. never was	b. is never	c. was never	d. never is
10. A : How did	d you go swimming?	B: I sometimes w	vent swimming.
a. long	b: far K	oc.about €	d. often
11. Sara usually	a book before she	went to bed in his	3/3/
a. reads	b. reading	c. read	d. to read
12. My mother			rive.
a. never	b. sometimes	c. often	d. always
13. What did de	o in the summer vaca	tion?	
a. you often	b. often you	c. usually you	d. always you

14. I sports	and ate healthy food t	to keep fit.				
a. did	b. do	c. does	d. doing			
15. Kareem me to play tennis yesterday.						
a. teach	b. teaches	c. taught	d. teaching			
16. I didn't	at home on the weeke	nd .				
a. stay	b. stayed	c. staying	d. stays			
17. Mr Khalid is a goo	d teacher. He was	last year.				
a. always friendly	l	b. never friendl	y			
c. friendly always		d. friendly usua	ally			
18. I played	games on my mobile	phone. I liked this	a lot.			
d. never	b. usually	c. don't	d. doesn't			
19. My uncle	to work on a commu	nity project last ye	ar.			
a. volunteers	b. volunteer	c. volunteered	d. volunteering			
20. I ate a lot of candie	es and I tired	d yesterday.				
a. am	b. were	c. was	d. didn't			
21. Our neighbor	to make the loca	l area cleaner.				
a. often helped	b. helped often	c. helped never	d. helped usually			
Complete the se	entences with correct	form of the word	(s) in brackets:			
	Longman E		· ·			
1. Shadi(always) reached school	ol late; his teachers	s were always pleased			
2. Faten favorite sport.	(rarely) played volle	yball when she w	as young; it was her			
3. How (n	n <mark>any)</mark> did you go to the	e school library?				
4. Ahmed: How ofte	4. Ahmed: How often did you leave your town? Hatem: Not (every).					
	n my town in the sumn		(3,			
5. Hana(c	<mark>always is)</mark> busy studyin	g before exams wh	en she was a student.			
6. Did you	(never) join in school	activities when yo	u were a student?			
7. Gamal (visits usually) us when he wasn't busy.						

Bit by Bit Exercises

Hadden and the second	Marie Control of the
8. A: How (long) did you visit	Aswan? B: I always visited it.
9. He (never was) lazy. He was	as always active.
10 (Do) you learn anything on	line? Yes, I learnt English.
11. I tried to solve the problem, but I	(can't).
12. What (do) you do yesterda	y?
13. Fareeda didn't (shared) her	ideas with her friends.
14. Ali studied hard last year. He	(always) got low marks.
15 (Was) you good at English	last year?
Ask and answer questions about ho	ow often you did something:
	• السؤال والجواب عن عدد مرات فعلك لشئ:
Question	Answer
- How often did you do sports? کم مرة مارست الرياضة؟	- I sometimes did sports. کنت احیانا امارس الریاضة
- How often did you do something to help your community? دطدمتجه معداسما لثيث تعلده مرة فعلت شيئا لمساعدة محتمعه	- I often to help my community. كثيراً ما كنت أفعل لمساعدة مجتمعي
- Did you learn anything interesting online this summer? دیلد الاهتمام الله عنه الله عنه الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال	hoga empyat المرابع على المرابع المرا

How often did you go online? کم مرة دخلت على الانترنت؟

الإنترنت هذا الصيف؟

- I went online four times a day. دخلت على الانترنت اربح مرات في اليوم.

Ceneral Exercises (1) on Lessons 3& 4

1	Complete	the follow	ing dialogue
	Complete	the follow	ing dialogue

Shady and Belal are talking about doing sports. Shady: Hi Belal! Did you do sports last summer? Belal: 1 Shady: What kind of sport did you do? Belal : 2 Shady: 8 Belal: I played football four times a week. Shady: 49 ? **Belal**: In a sports club. Shady: Who did you play with? Belal : (3) Read and complete the text with words from the list: obelisk - traveled - temples - monuments - travels Egypt is a very old and great country. There are many 10 _____ in Egypt. If you visit Aswan, you will see 🙆 _____ and statues. I 🔞 _____ to Aswan last year. I saw many interesting things. The most interesting thing was an Which was a tall monument with a top that is usually in the shape of all and the fill and a a pyramid. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10 0 1. A/An _____ is a model of a person, animal, or object, sometimes made of stone. a. catacomb b. temple c. statue d. obelisk 2. We know about ancient Egyptians from the writing on the _____ of temples. a. walls b. towers c. flats 3. I don't know the _____ for this maths problem. Can you help me? a. situation b. solution c. pollution d. opinion

Unit 1 A great summer

4. W	/hat forms of	do you use? I u	se my mobile phor	ne, tablet and l	aptop.
	a. music	b. technology	c. time	d. clothes	
5. T	he suffix	turns the word help	into an adjective.		
	aly	bful	cion	den	
6. Ir	the past, they	horses and c	amels to travel.		
	g. used	b. use	c. uses	d. using	\$
7. S	he didn't write or .	a story yest	terday.		
	a. reads	b. read	c. reading	d. to read	
8. S	amy never	chess when he w	as eight.		
	a. played	b. play	c. plays	d. playing	
9. V	/hat you	ı buy at the market la	st week?		
	a. do		The second second	d. does	
10. A		Luxor? B: No. I			
	a. always	b. often	c. sometimes	d. never	
	Complete the se	ntences with correc	t form of the word	d(s) in bracket	s:
1. I	(see) th	nis film four times last	t week.		
2. H	le(ofter	n was) nervous but no	ow he is calm.		
3. A	li didn't	(wore) his coat becau	use it wasn't cold.		
4. I	brahim	(is) happy when dad	bought him a bike.		
5. F	low often	(do) you practice fo	ootball last year?		
(3)	Write a paragrap	h of (80-90) words	on: 🖟		
		"An ancient plac	e you visited"	ه في آخر الوحدة)	امجاب عند
	159 				
40.40					
		a.fi *.\ma.aanad7.	جابة عن الأسئلة الآتية <u>ك</u>	مكناء مي خالا الا	
	- What tupe of a	ncient building was this		محدث من حدث الإ	2
	- Where was it?				
	- How old was it				
	- Why was it a s	pecial ancient building		المامة تسايدانا	
	- It was a temple		عبارات الاثية	مكنك استخدام الـ	
	Charles and the second	000 years			
		s very special			





Key Vocabulary

	-		المفردات الرئيسية
rising star (n)	نجمة صاعدة	informal (adj)	کیر رسمی
champion (n)	بطل ریاضی	improve (d)	يحسن/يطور
achievement (n)	انجاز	amaze (d)	يدهش
opponent (n)	خصم او منافس في لعبة	achieve (d)	ينجز/يحقق
victory (n)	فوز / انتصار	predict (ed)	يتنبأ
focus (n) (v)	ترکیز / یرکز	5.50 f	

Short form	صيغة مختصرة	Word or phrase	الكلمة أو العيارة
BTW		= by the way	بالمناسبة
V		= very	جدا
TTYL		= talk to you later	بدا ساتحدث اليك لاحقا
Thanx		= thanks	صححت ایک اسکراک اشکراک
LOL		= laughing out loud	.صدر الضحك بصوت مرتفع
CU		= see you	اراك لاحقا

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

			-
table tennis (n)	تنس الطاولة	quite (adv)	الی حد ما
The United Nations (n)	الامم المتحدة	instead (adv)	بدلا من ذلك
talent (n)		adults (n)	اشخاص بالغين
although (conj.)	على الرغم من	clearly (adv)	بوضوح
dream (n) (v)	حلم/ يحلم	ping-pong (n)	بنج بونج (تنس طاولة)
however (conj.)	ولكن/ومع ذلك	short form	صيغة مختصرة
journey (n)	رحلة	African (adj)	افریقی
road (n)	طريق	Arab player	لاعب عربی
coach (n)	مدر بالأستنة الأنبارعه	award (n) المثانية	حائزة
attention (n)	انتباه	Lagos (n)	مدینة لیجوس (فی نیجیریا)
success (n)			ينجح
speed (n)	سرعة		یستمتی ب
competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة		يأمل
national (adj)	وطنى	connect (ed)	
qualities (n)		practice (d)	يمارس

Unit 1 A great summer

explain (ed)	يشرح
finish (ed)	ینهی/ینتهی
include (d)	يتضمن/يشمل
	finish (ed) include (d)

Definitions

focus	ترکیز	giving special attention to something you do
victories	انتصارات	successes in competitions
champion	بطل ریاضی	the person who wins a competition
achievement	انجاز	a thing that someone has done very well
opponents	خصوم	the people you play against in a competition

Expressions & Prepositions

		Total	
achieve a goal	يحقق هدف	write in Arabic	يكتب باللغة العربية
be back at school	يرجع للمدرسة	for the rest of	لبقية الـ
since then,	منذ ذلك الحين	came top of	يأتي على قمة
one year later	بعد سنة	even if	حتی لو
(be) born on 12th Decer	nber	stop from + v.ing	يمنځ من
NA 19 NA 1	ولدت في 12 ديسمبر	feel about	يشعر بخصوص
What an achievement!	يا له من انجاز!	at the age of	في عمر
speak about	يتحدث عن	in the end	فى النهاية
come true	يتحقق/يصبح حقيقة	take things step by	step
do well	يحسن صنعاً		يأخذ الامور خطوة بخطوة
work hard	يعمل بجد		

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

المضاد Opposite	Antonym /	المرادف Synonym	الكلمة	Word
سهل	easy	hard	بدص	difficult
غير مباشر	indirect	straight	مباشر	direct
ببطء	slowly	fast	بسرعة	quickly
غامض/غیر واضح	unclear	obvious	واضح	clear
منخفض	low	long	مرتفع	high
غير رسمى	informal	official	رسمى	formal
يتجاهل	ignore	pay attention	یرکز	focus

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-tion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	information / competition
-ing/-ed	تحول الفعل الى صفة	rising / amazed
inter-	تعنی بین	international
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	clearly
-an	تشیر الی شخص او شئ ینتمی الی مکان	African
-ment	تحول الفعل الى اسم	achievement
in-	تعطى عكس المعنى	informal
-fut	تحول الفعل الى صفة	successful / useful

Conjugations of	Irregular Verbs		تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
let	يدع/يترك	let	let
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
become	يصبح	became	become
come	یاتی	came	come
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
show	يظهر/يبين	showed	shown

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية 🐧

1) award / reward

- جائزة رسمية award و
- Ex. She won an award for winning the competition.
- مكافأة تشجيعية reward
 - Ex. My parents gave me a reward for passing the exams.

Unit 1 A great summer

2) champion / hero

- champion بطل ریاضی
- Ex. Sara Samir is an Olympic champion.
- بطل قام بعمل شجاع Hero ،
 - Ex. My father rescued us from the fire. He is a real hero.

(3) However / Although

- مَعَ ذَلِثُ/لَكُن However •
- تاتى عادة فى أول الجملة ويأتى بعدها فاصلة. Ex. We didn't like the hotel. However, we had a good time.
- Although + subject + verb.
 بالرغم من اولكن

تأتى أول أو منتصف الجملة ولا ياتي بعدها فاصلة.

- Ex. Although he had a bad luck, he won the game.
- Ex. I always pass the exam, although I don't study hard.

4 Too + adjective

نستخدم الصفة + (too) للتعبير عن ان الشئ زائد عن الحد المطلوب.

Ex. The table was too high for her!

(5) enjoy / decide

enjoy + v.ing

tennis.

یاتی بعد (<mark>enjoy</mark>) فعل + (<mark>ing)</mark> Ex. She enjoyed practicing table

unney even i the

· decide + to + inf.

ياتى بعد (<mark>decide</mark>) فعل فى المصدر + Ex. He decided to make a ping-pong table.

ليس فقط...... ولكن أيضًا but also ليس فقط......

نستخدم التركيب السابق لاضافة معلومة والتاكيد عليها.

Ex. My uncle is not only a writer but also an actor.

everyone / everybody

الضمير (everyone) وما يماثله من كلمات يأخذ فعل مفرد ويعود عليه ضمير جمع.

- Ex. Everyone is ready for the trip.
- Ex. Everyone should do their best.



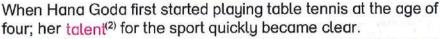
Reading



SB Page (12)

A Rising Star!(1)





However(3); there was a problem. The table was too high for her! "What can we do?" her coaches(4) asked, seeing how much she wanted to plau.

In the end, they made the legs shorter so that the table was lower. Since then(5), Hand has improved(6) year after year, and she amazed(7) the table tennis world by her speed and focus(8).

Born on 12th December 2007. Hang became Egypt's youngest ever national champion(9) in 2019, at the age of 12. Just one year later; she came top of the ITTF(10) (International Table Tennis Federation) under- 15 women's world rankings(11) - the first African and Arab player to do so. Then, in 2022, she won a top award⁽¹²⁾ at the ITTF African Cup in Lagos⁽¹³⁾. What an achievement(14)!

The United Nations chose Hana to take part(15) in Shabab Balad, a project in Egypt to help young people learn and connect in the world of work.

Although Hana is still much younger than many of her opponents(16), she works just as hard as any older player. She has also spoken about how important it is for her to take things step by step(17), always learning and trying hard to achieve(18) her victories(19).

- نحمة صاعدة
 - ٦. موهية
- س مذيا ربلد ٣٠.
 - ع. مدرب
- ه. منذذلك الحين
- ٦. تحسنت/تطورت
 - ۷. ادهشت
 - ۸. ترکیز
 - 9. بطل قومی
 - ا. الاتحاد الدولي لتنس الطاولة
 - اا. ترتیب
 - ١١. حائزة
- ١٣. كأس الأمم الأفريقية في لاحوس
 - ١٤. إنجاز
 - ه۱. شارکت فی
 - ۱۲. منافسون
 - ١٧. خطوة بخطوة
 - ۱۸. تحقق
 - 19. انتصارات
 - ۲۰. حتی لو
 - ۲۱. أصبحت حقيقة

Hana really enjoys practicing for long hours every day, even if(20) it is hard work. She is showing young people in Egypt that not only is it possible to make your dreams come true⁽²¹⁾, but you can also enjoy the journey even if the road is difficult.

Reading Skill

معارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

- أصبحت هنا بطلة مصر محليا في عام Hana became Egypt's national champion in d. 2023 b. 2019 c. 2022
- 2. How did Hana improve year after year?
- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence.

- - كيف تطورت هنا من عام لآخر؟ لخص الفقرة الأخيرة في جملة

معارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)

- 1. Hang started playing table tennis at the age of four. بدأت هنا في لعب تنس الطاولة في عمر أربع سنُواتٌ.
- Hana amazed the table tennis world by her speed and focus.
 - أدهشت هنا عالم تنس الطاولة بسر عتها وتر كبزها.
- 3. Hana won a top award at the African Cup.

- فازت بالجائزة الأولى في كأس أفريقيا.
- 4. She always learns and tries hard to achieve her victories
- تتعلم وتحاول بجد أن تحقق الانتصارات.

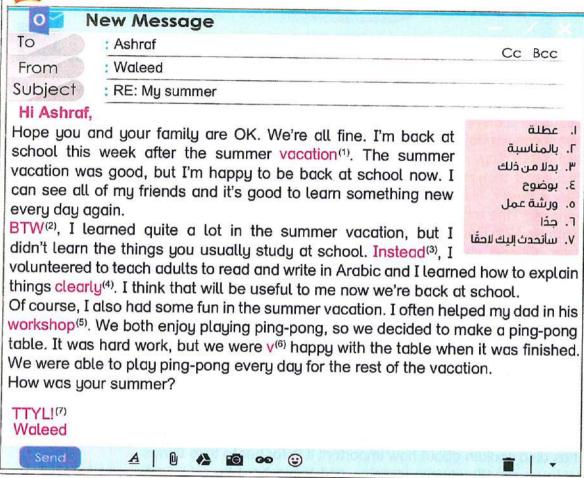
3. Hana loves practicing hard and shows uong pepole that dreams can came true.

2. Through traning and hard work.

1. b. 2019

:stewenA





Exercises on Vocabulary



Complete the following dialogue:

Yasin is asking Eyad about his favorite sport.

Yasin: What's your favorite sport, Eyad?

Eyad: ①

Yasin: Where do you practice it?

Eyad: ②

Yasin: ③

Eyad: Hana Goda is my favorite player.

Yasin: ④

Eyad: Hana became Egypt's youngest ever national champion in 2019.

Yasin: Wow! I think it's a great achievement.

Eyad: ⑤



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Longman Exercises

95	1. Hana Goda and Ahme	ed El Gendy have ma	de amazing	
	a. achievements	b. encouragements	c. failures	d. punishments
2	2. Although my brother is	s younger than his	, he plays	better than them all.
	a. opponents	b. referees	c. enemies	d. assistants
3	3. Our Egyptian army acl	hieved a great	in 1973.	
	a. harm	b. enemy	c. victory	d. loss
2	1. Ahmed El Gendy is ar	Egyptian	who won Egypt's	first gold medal at
	the Paris Olympics.			
	a. trainer	b. swimmer	c. coach	d. champion
5	5. Don't let difficulties	you from ach	ieving your drear	ns.
	a. delete	b. arrive	c. stop	d. encourage
6	6. I'm very happy; all my	dreams have	true.	
	a. said	b. thought	c. come	d. seen
7	'. In 2022, Hana Goda w	on a topa	t the Internationa	l Table Tennis
	Federation.			
	a. award	b. present	c. money	d. statue
8	. The young man receive	ed his reward proudl	y. "Reward" here	is a/an
	a. verb	b. adverb	c. nounced bay	d. adjective
9	. Do you think it is possi	ble toeart	hquakes?	
	a. disappear	b. think	c. agree	d. predict
10	. We usually use	language when v	vriting emails to o	close friends.
	a. formal	b. informal	c. wrong	d. no
11	. Does your email	information abou	ut your summer v	acation?
	a. include	b. consist	c. talk	d. appear
12	. If you work hard, you v	vill achieve success.	When we add the	e suffix '-ful' to
	"success", we change	t into a/an	a i	
	a. adverb	b. noun	c. verb	d. adjective

Unit 1 A great summer

13	. You should focus on	your work. "Focus" h	ere is opposite ir	n meaning to:
	a. disappear	b. think	c. ignore	d. try
14.	. Everyone could achie	eve great things if	worked he	ard.
	a. they're	b. she	c. he	d. they
15.	To is to give	e special attention to	something you o	lo.
	a. achieve	b. focus	c. ignore	d. keep
		Bit by Bit Exc	ercises	
16.	A /Anstar is	s someone who is be	coming very suc	cessful very quickly
	a. boring			155 MH - 155/
17.	is a sport v			
	a. Football	b. Basketball	c. Handball	d. Table tennis
18.	My biggest	is to travel around th	e world.	
	a. dream	b. nightmare	c. medal	d. champion
19.	The player's world	improved afte	er winning the tou	ırnament.
	a. reading	b. swimming	c. ranking	d. feeling
20.	She started playing to	ennis at the	of five.	
	a. old	b. age	c. time	d. size
21.	of going to	the movies, we staye	ed home.	
	a. Because	b. Also	c. Whether	d. Instead
22.	Helping people is one	of the most importan	it of a l	kind person.
	a. qualities			
23.	If you don't work hard,	you won't	your goal in life.	
	a. loss	b. achieve	c. let	d. speak
24.	I played against a tale	nted but I	won.	
	a. opponent		c. medal	
25.	A/Anis som			
2007 (200 - 612		b, tournament		
26.	To means to			
	a. get worse			
27. /	Ahmed El Gendy		ne won the gold n	nedal in the Olympics.
	a. amazed	b. improved	c. let	d, formed

			Lessons 5&
28. It's not enoug	h to have a to s	succeed, you should	d work hard as well.
a. tournamer	nt b. talent	c. problem	d. statue
29. Many	went to France to com	pete in the Olympic	S.
a. sportspeop	ole b. students	c. engineers	d. farmers
30. I use social m	edia towith peo	ple from different c	ountries.
a. connect	b. compete	c. improve	d. organize
31. Regular	and eating healthy fo	ood is important for	sportspeople.
a. travel	b. sign	c. practice	d. vacation
Write an em	nail of (80-90) words:		مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)
To your friend I	Hussein about your favori	te sport.	•
Your name is M	Nohammed and your email	il address is mohan	nmed77@gmail.com.
	mail address is hussein82		
	TO 27 SQUARE LAW AT REPUBLISHED AND ARROWS A	PART 12-01-10-2-10-2-10-2-10-2-10-2-10-2-10-	
and the same of th	Message		A SHEET
То :			Cc Bcc
Subject :			
,		b Alsc	
		911 - 10	
	8 (B/B) (5	b. wedses	
	W 2007 45.2251	We was but	and w

	– يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأُسْتُلَة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنْشَائية
- What is your	favorite sport? Ou to soone pairtie make a soone pa
- Where can yo	
- What do you	need to play it?
	– يمكنك استخدام العبارات الاتية – يمكنك استخدام العبارات الاتية
- My favorite s	port is
- It can be	
- All you need	is a small table

Send

Review on Unit 1

Key Vocal	oulary		المفردات الرئيسية
coach (n)	مدرب	rising star (n)	نجمة صاعدة
talented (adj)	موهوب	champion (n)	بطل ریاضی
tiring (adj)	مُتعِب	achievement (n)	انجاز
tournament (n)	دورة رياضية	opponent (n)	خصم او منافس فی لعبة
AI (artificial intelliç	gence) ردكاء الاصطناعي	neighbor (n)	جار
vacation (n)	عطلة / اجازة	meeting (n)	اجتماع
workshop (n)	ورشة عمل	A helping hand	ید العون
catacombs (n)	سراديب وغرف دفن الموتى	focus (n) (v)	ترکیز/یرکز
obelisk (n)	مسلة	informal (adj)	غير رسمى
monument (n)	اثر تاریخی	imagine (d)	يتخيل
archaeologist (n)	اثاً إمالد	volunteer (ed) (n)	يتطوع/ متطوع
effect (n)	تاثير	help out (ed)	عدلسي
solution (n)	حل 9	check (ed)	يتأكد

Language

قواعد لغوية

1- The past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل تم وانتهى في الماضى:

Ex. Two months ago, I started helping out at a project in my city.

Affirmative الاثبات

Ex. We climbed a mountain yesterday.

Ex. I played games last week.

Negative النفي

• بشكل عام يحول الماضي البسيط للنفي بإستخدام (didn't) مع تحويل الفعل للمصدر.

Ex. I didn't visit my family.

Ex. He didn't eat fish.

• يمكن استخدم (never) بدلاً من (didn't) ويأتى بعدها الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

Ex. Khalid never went to Aswan.



?...مصدر الفعل .inf + فاعل + Did

--السؤال بــ " هل...؟"

Ex. Did she ride her bike?

- Yes, she did.

- No, she didn't.

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

السؤال بكلمة استفهام (-Wh)

→ فاعل + did + كلمة استفهام → inf....?

Ex. A: What did you do yesterday?

B: We went to the park.

2- Past time expressions

التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضي

- تستخدم الكلمات الزمنية التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث الفعل:

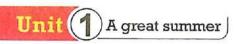
yesterday	أمس	last	السابق
in the past	فى الماضي	ago	منذ(يأتي قبلها فترة زمنية)
in (2010)	(۲۰۱۰) ماد رغ		

Ex. I visited the museum last night.

Ex. We bought a car four years ago.

ظروف التكرار Adverbs of frequency

Indefinite	غير محدد	Definite	محددة
always	دائما دائما	once all all all all all all all all all al	مرة
usually	قادة قادة	twice	مرتين
often	لبالذ	three times	ثلاث مرات
sometimes	احیانا	every day / week	کل یوم /اسبوع
rarely	نادرا		
never	ابدا		



Daragraphs& Emails

فقرات انشائية و رسائل بريد الكثروني عن موضوعات وردت بالبوحدة

Lessons 1&2

My summer was full of fun and learning! I played in a big tournament with my friends, which was exciting. I also helped out at a community garden, planting flowers and learning about plants. To give back to my community, I taught some adults how to read and write in Arabic. It was rewarding to see them improve. I tried writing some cool stories using AI, which was like magic!

Lessons 3&4

I once visited a very old place with amazing things. It was a temple in Aswan. It was very old as it was about 3000 years old! There was a tall monument made of stone called an obelisk, and a big statue of a person. These were many monuments from a long time ago. The temple was very special, and lots of people came to see it. I took many photos to remember this amazing place.

Lessons 5&6

To:

hussein82@yahoo.com

From:

mohammed77@gmail.com.

Subject:

My favorite sport

Dear Hussein.

It is nice to write to you. I want to tell you about my favorite sport. Table tennis, also known as ping-pong, is my favorite sport. It's a fun and exciting game that can be played indoors or outdoors. All you need is a small table, two paddles, and a tiny ball. The goal is to hit the ball over the net so your opponent can't return it. I hope to hear from you soon.

Yours.

Mohammed

Al Azhar

My weekend was fun! On Saturday, I woke up late and had breakfast. After that, I went to the park with my friends. We played games and laughed a lot. In the evening, I watched a funny movie at home. On Sunday, I helped my mom with the housework like cleaning the house. Then, I read a book in my room and went to bed.

General Exercises Unit 1

My favorite sportsperson is Hana Goda. She is a young Egyptian table tennis player. She's known for her incredible skills. Although she's still very young, she's already won many important tournaments.

Hana started playing table tennis at a young age. She practiced hard and quickly became one of the best players in Egypt. Her dream is to represent Egypt at the Olympics and win a gold medal. Many people think she can do it! Hana is a great example of hard work.

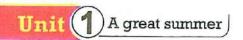


A: Listening



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

			نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب
1. Playing sports hel	ps you get	and healthy.	
a. weak	b. lazy	c. strong	d. funny
2. You can play with	a friend and make a		
a. team	b. statue	c. test	d. park
	B: Langua	ge Functions	
Complete the fo	ollowing dialogue:		
Rana: What did yo	u do yesterday?		
Wafaa : 10			
Rana : How did y	ou write the story?		
Wafaa : @			
Rana : 60			?
Wafaa : AI is the s	short form of artificial	intelligence,	
6 Choose the cor	rect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
1. The team did well	in the and	we won the cup.	
a. test	b. dream	c. competition	d. meeting
2. She worked hard	and finally	· miss	
a. succeeded	b. visited	c. failed	d. recycled
3. He is a brave man	. He is a famous nati	onal	
a. temple	b. statue	c. award	d. hero
4. A/Anis	a person who compe	tes against you.	
a. actor	b. opponent	c. engineer	d. star
5. Nothing could stop	her achie	ving her dream.	
a. of	b. for	c. with	d. from



C: Reading Comprehension



Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Traveling around the world is like opening a big, colorful book. Every page is a new country with <u>exciting</u> stories and pictures. You can climb high mountains, swim in warm oceans, and eat yummy foods from different places. You'll meet people who are very different from you, but you can learn from <u>them</u> and make new friends. It's a big adventure that will teach you lots of things.

A. Answer the following questions: 1. Give a suitable title for the passage. 2. What can you do when you travet? 3. Do you think traveling is important? B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to	A Answer the follow		ngs.	
2. What can you do when you travel? 3. Do you think traveling is important? B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to				
3. Do you think traveling is important? B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to				
B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to	3. Do you think travel	ling is important?		
a. mountains b. food c. people d. book 5. The underlined word "exciting" means a. terrible b. interesting c. lazy d. bad Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences: 1. a lot - had - We - fun - of. 2. last - did - do - What - you - summer? 3. is - Whu - building - it - a special - ancient? 4. out - in - helped - I - workshop - my family's. D: Writing Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: "What did you do at the weekend?"				
5. The underlined word "exciting" means a. terrible b. interesting c. lazy d. bad Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences: 1. a lot - had - We - fun - of. 2. last - did - do - What - you - summer? 3. is - Whu - building - it - a special - ancient? 4. out - in - helped - I - workshop - my family's. D: Writing Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: "What did you do at the weekend?"	4. The underlined pro	onoun " <u>them</u> " refers to	0	
a, terrible b, interesting c, lazy d, bad Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences: 1. a lot - had - We - fun - of. 2. last - did - do - What - you - summer? 3. is - Whu - building - it - a special - ancient? 4. out - in - helped - I - workshop - my family's. D: Writing Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: "What did you do at the weekend?"	a. mountains	b. food	c. people	d. book
Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences: 1. a lot - had - We - fun - of. 2. last - did - do - What - you - summer? 3. is - Whu - building - it - a special - ancient? 4. out - in - helped - I - workshop - my family's. D: Writing Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: (5) Write did you do at the weekend?"	5. The underlined wo	rd " <u>exciting</u> " means_		
1. a lot - had - We - fun - of. 2. last - did - do - What - you - summer? 3. is - Whu - building - it - a special - ancient? 4. out - in - helped - الله - workshop - my family's. D: Writing (b) Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: (b) Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:	a. terrible	b. interesting	c. lazy	d. bad
2. last - did - do - <u>What</u> - you - summer? 3. is - <u>Whu</u> - building - it - a special - ancient? 4. out - in - helped - <u>I</u> - workshop - my family's. D: Writing Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة) "What did you do at the weekend?"	Reorder the following	owing words to mak	e meaningful se	entences:
3. is - Whu - building - it - a special - ancient?	1. a lot - had - <u>We</u> - fu	ın - of		i.k
4. out - in - helped - I - workshop - my family's. D: Writing Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: "What did you do at the weekend?"	2. last - did - do - Who	at - you - summer?	[34] [81] ([4] - 1)	
D: Writing Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة) "What did you do at the weekend?"	3. is - Why - building	- it - a special - ancie	nt?	
Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: "What did you do at the weekend?"	4. out - in - helped - 🛚	- workshop - my fami	ly's	
Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: "What did you do at the weekend?"		D: W	riting	Factorial Control
(مجاب عنه في اخر الوحدة) "What did you do at the weekend?"	🚯 Write a paragrap			
				The second secon
		THE RESERVE OF THE PERSON OF T	and the second	

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



A: Listening



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Community gardens a	re places where peo	ple can	-•
a. grow their own food	d	b. buy vegetabl	es
c. sleep		d. bake	
2. You can work with other	er people to grow fre	sh fruits and	•
a. pasta	b. stories	c. vegetables	d. sports
3. Growing plants is good	for your health and	the	
a. temples	b. environment	c. sky	d. vacation
4. You can also learn abo	out in the o	community garde	n.
a. recycling	b. sports	c. gardening	d. eating
	B: Language F	unctions	1
Ocmplete the follow	ving dialogue:		
A tourist and a guide a	re going to visit the	Pyramids.	
Tourist: What are we g		and the second	
Guide : 0			***************************************
Tourist: Wow! Where o	re the Pyramids?		
Guide : 2		The stage	
Tourist : 8			
Guide : The Great Pyro		*	
Tourist : @			?
Guide : They are made			
Tourist: What else can	we see here?		request newspanishment
Guide : 6			

3

Read and complete the text with words from the list:

were - recycling - volunteered - was - picked

Two months ago, I started	d helping out at a project in my city. I 🚳 at
a community garden. I 🙆 💷	up litter and put it in bags. They took it to the
3 center. It 0	a great job.

C: Reading Comprehension



Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer was really fun! It was a bit hot, and the days were long. It was the perfect time to play outside. Many kids went to the beach. They built sandcastles, swam in the cool water, and played with their friends. Some kids liked to go to the park. They climbed on the trees, rode their bikes, and flew kites.

If you didn't like the hot weather, you could stay <u>indoors</u> and have fun too. You could read books, play video games, or watch movies. Some kids went to summer camps where they learned new things and made new friends.

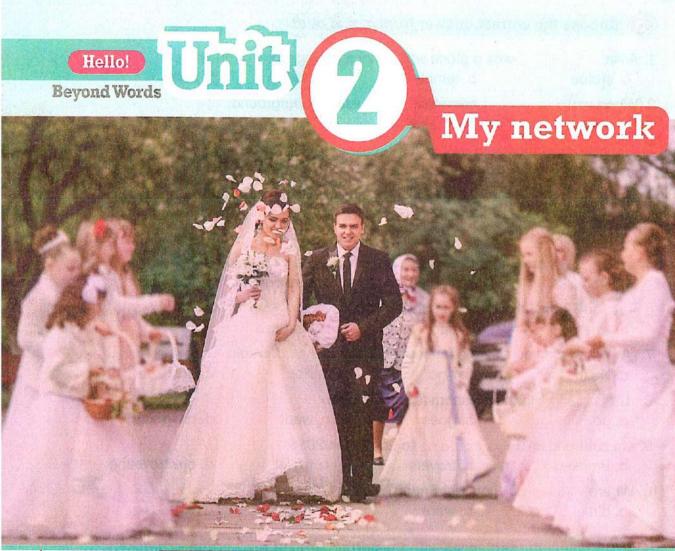
No matter what you did, it was important to stay safe in the sun. Remember to wear sunscreen, drink lots of water, and take breaks from the heat. Summer is a great time to relax and have fun.

A. Answer the following questions:

What are some th			
2. How can you stay	safe in the sun?		
3. What is the main	GEN, Common Comm	?	
B. Choose the corre			
4. A good place to p	lay outside is a		
a. library	b. park	c. bedroom	d. school
5. The underlined we	ord " <u>indoors</u> " means	sa hous	se.
a. outside	b. inside	c. far from	d. behind
6. What is a good inc	door activity for a ho	t day?	
a. Swimming	b. Reading	c. Climbing	d. Playing football

	D: Vocabulary	gand Structure		
6 Choose the c	orrect answer from a	b, c or d:		
	was a place where an b. temple		ten prayed. d. park	
	b. volunteer			
a. sports	great and ancient b. vacations	c. hobbies		
medal.	Ahmed El Gendi broke			
	b. championunderground tunnels a			
a. Obelisks	b. Templesy was two months	c. Catacombs		
a. when	b. ago visit the museum? B:	c. because		
a. Next	b. Ago	c. For		
a. go	b. goes	c. went	d. am going	
a. traveled	b. travels	c. travel	d. are traveling	100
0. Where a. did		c. are	d. was	1
	sentences with the cor			
2. I (di	idn't) listened to music	when I was young	1.	
	Did) you at school yes a (tomorro	and the second s	was.	
	E Wr	iting at Alberta		

Writ	e a paragrap	h of (80-90) words on:	
			مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)
		"Your favorite sportsperson"	



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

Social media posts about a friend's wedding; An emial to a friend about making arrangements; Friends online: a short story.

Writing:

Social media posts about a birthday.

Listening:

Profiles about family life around the world; A dialog about selling things online

Speaking:

Asking questions about family life in other countries.

Language:

Determiners and possessive 's /s'; Can and will for requests.







Key Vocabulary

cy .	ocabarar y	المفردات الرثيسية

bride (n)	عروس	wedding reception (n)	حفل الزفاف
groom (n)	عريس	wedding cake (n)	تورتة الزفاف
wedding guests (n)	ضيوف حفل الزفاف	wedding dress (n)	فستان الزفاف
marriage contract (n)	عقد الزواج	wedding (n)	حفل زفاف
network (n)	شبكة	wedding service (n)	مراسم الزفاف

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

fun (n / adj)	متعة/ممتع	galabeya (n)	جلابية
photographer (n)	مُصوَّر	detailed information (n)	معلومات تفصيلية
signing (n)	توقيع	cinema (n)	سينما
outfit (n)	ڔ۬ؿؙ	message (n)	رسالة
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	opinion (n)	رأى
post (n)	منشور (على الإنترنت)	curly (adj)	مجعد
shop windows (n)	فترينات العرض	bracelet (n)	أسورة
members (n)	أفراد/أعضاء	gift (n)	هدية
gold (n / adj)	خھب/خھبي	plan (n)	خطة
necklace (n)	عقْد	relatives (n)	أقارب
whole (adj)	کل/کامل	laugh (ed)	يضحك
restaurant (n)	رمحكه	hug (ged)	يحتضن
shopping mall (n)	مرکز تسوق	sign (ed)	يوقُ
maybe (adv)	ربما	look (ed)	يبدو
fur (n)	فرو	celebrate (d)	يحتفل
		9 🙃	



bride	العروس	the woman who gets married
groom	العريس	the man who gets married
wedding guests ضيوف حفل الزفاف		the people who come to the wedding
marriage contra	ct عقد الزواج	the paper that the people who are getting married sign
wedding recepti	on حفل الزّفاف	the event where people eat and enjoy themselves
wedding cake	تورتة الزفاذ	something sweet that people at a wedding eat
wedding dress فا	فستان الزف	a special outfit that a woman wears at a wedding

Expressions & Prepositions

take photos	يلتقط صور	next to جوار
take place	يحدث/يقع/يجري	meet up with بلتقي بـ
make arrangements	يقوم بعمل ترتيبات	get married to (شخص) پتزوج اُو تتزوج من
have a meal	يتناول وجبة	on/at the weekend في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
buy (sth) for (sb)	يشتري (شيء) لـ (شخص)	it was time for كان هذا هو الوقت المناسب لـ
on her phone	على هاتفها	look for نيحث عن
live a long away from	ا ند اغید ا	

Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
reception	حفل استقبال	party / celebration	con igracia
amazing	مدهش	fantastic / incredible	السيء/فظيع bad / awful
traditional	تقليدي	old-fashioned	modern / new عاصر
delicious	لذيذ	tasty / yummy	tasteless / unpleasant بلا طعم/مدع
favorite	مفضل	favored / preferred	مکروہ disliked
inside	داخل/ بالداخل	indoors	outside / outdoors خارج/بالخارج

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	usage	Example
-al	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	traditional
-en	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	golden
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	photographer
-y	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	funny
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	celebration

Conjugations of Irregular Verb	S	تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة
Present	Past simple	Past Participle
take àà	took یا	taken
ني come	came يأت	come
eat کل	ate مصوره علم	eaten
see	saw ير	seen
hear Europe	يد heard	heard
sit علس	sat عم	sat
wear پتدي	wore ير	worn
ىف stand	stood ية	stood
send پسل	sent ير	sent

Language Notes

`ملاحظات لغوية 🎢

مص :(arrive (v. d)

ويليها حرف الجر at /on/in عندما يأتي بعدها مكان أو زمان كما يلي:

· arrive in:

- يستخدم بعدها حرف الجر (in) عندما يتبعها اسم دولة او مدينة، أو عندما يليها عام أو شهر:

Ex. My father first arrived in London in 2000.

· arrive on:

– ويستخدم بعدها حرف الجر (on) – عندما يتبعها إسم شارع، أو إسم يوم من أيام الأسبوع:

Ex. My father will arrive on Monday.

arrive at:

– ويستخدم بعدها حرف الجر (at) عندما يتبعها مكان محدد (مبنى)، او توقيت محدد (ساعة):

Ex. We arrived at Cairo airport at 9 pm. Ex. He arrived at the station on time.

2) in = wearing المرتدر

- يمكن استخدام حرف الجر in كصفة بمعنى (مرتديا) عندما يأتى بعده إسم قطعة ملابس أو لون قطعة الملابس:

- Ex. She looked very beautiful in her wedding dress.
- Ex. The lady in black is my aunt.

3) on / at the weekend / weekends:

- يمكن استخدم حرف الجر (on) او (at) قبل كلمة the weekend / weekends الشكلين صحيحين: Ex. I'm going to travel to Hurghada on / at the weekend.

Ex. I never work on / at weekends.

send / buy - somebody / something:

send / buy -> somebody -> something

Ex. I'm sending you a photo of me.

Ex. I bought him a toy. send >> something to >> somebodu

Ex. I'm sending a photo to you.

buy → something → for → something

Ex. Dad bought a toy for me.

5) maybe / may be:

Maybe (adv)

- كلمة واحدة و غالبا تاتي اول الجملة و تعنى ربما و هي حال

Ex. Maybe no one will come to the party.

· may be

- كلمتين الفعل الناقص (may) و فعل يكون be و تاتي وسط الجملة و لا تأتي في الاول او الاخر

Ex. He may be studying his lessons.

Check on Language Notes .

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

		-1.10	
1. I arrived	Aswan in the early	morning.	
a. to	b. in	c. on	d. for
2. My father arrived _	the hotel	before the wedding s	tarted.
a. at	b. on	c. for	d. to
3. The boy	the yellow shirt is r	ny friend.	
a. on	b. at	c. in the diff	d: of
4. I would like to stay			
		c. to	d. with
5. He is sending			
a. to me a gift	b. me a gift	c. a gift for me	d. me to a gift
6this wasr	n't a good idea.	The second secon	
"SS a. May	b. May be	c. Maybe	d. Be



Readina



SB Page (16)

A plan for a wedding



- The bride⁽¹⁾, Shorouk, and the groom⁽²⁾, Sherif, arrive at 5 pm.
- The photographer⁽³⁾ arrives at 5.30 pm to take photos of⁽⁴⁾ the bride in her wedding dress(5) and the groom.
- The wedding guests⁽⁶⁾ arrive for the wedding service⁽⁷⁾ between 6 and 6.30 pm.
- The signing⁽⁸⁾ of the marriage contract⁽⁹⁾ takes place⁽¹⁰⁾ between 7.30 and 8.30 pm.
- The wedding reception⁽¹¹⁾ starts at 9 pm. The guests have a meal(12), eat wedding cake(13), and take photos with the bride and groom.



٦. العرسن

٣. المصور

ع. يلتقط صورالا

ه. فستان الزفاف

٦. ضيوف الزفاف

٧. حفل الزفاف

٨. توقيع

9. عقد الزواج

ال يحدث/يقع

اا. حفل الزفاف

١٢. يتناول وجبة

١٣. تورتة الزفاف





SB Page (17)

Read the following, then answer the questions below:

1. Last weekend in Luxor, my cousin Amira got married to(1) Ayman. It was a really fun day(2). I have a large family and more than half of the wedding guests were members(3) of my family!

I loved seeing my whole family come together(4) to celebrate(5) with Amira and Ayman. I saw aunts and uncles who live a long way from us and who I don't see very often. This is a photo of me next to(6) Amira and some of my cousins.

- 2. The wedding service was really beautiful. When Amira arrived, you could hear everyone say, "Wow!" She looked(7) so beautiful and her wedding dress was amazing(8). It was white, and she was wearing(9) a beautiful gold necklace(10) and bracelets(11) that were a gift⁽¹²⁾ from Ayman. Ayman's traditional⁽¹³⁾ galabeya was white. The bride and groom looked very happy!
- 3. After the signing⁽¹⁴⁾ of the contract⁽¹⁵⁾, it was time for⁽¹⁶⁾ some food and some fun(17). That's my favorite(18) part of a wedding - the wedding reception! I sat at a table with my two brothers. my parents(19), and my grandma.

I wanted to talk to some other relatives(20) after the meal(21), so I got up and went to talk to my cousins. My cousin Eman showed me all her photos of the wedding on her phone, then Ayman and Amira cut the wedding cake. It was delicious(22)!

ا. تزوجت من

٦. يوم ممتع ٣. أعضاء/أفراد

ع. بحتمعون

ه. بحتفل

٦. بحوار

۷. بدت/ظهرت ٨. مُدهش/رائع

٩.مرتدية

ال عقد ذهبي

اا. اساور

۱۲. هدية

۱۳. تقلیدی

١٤. توقيع

ها. العقد

۱٦. حان وقت

۱۷. متعة

۱۸. مفضل 19. الوالدين

۲۰. أقارب

۱٦. وحية

۲۲. لذيذ

Reading Skill

مهارة الكتابة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Which of the following is a good title for the text?

اي من الآتي عنوان مناسب للنص

a. A beautiful wedding in Luxor.

b. The importance of weddings.

c. How to plan a wedding.

d. A trip to Luxor.

2. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

لخص تانى فقرة في جملة واحدة

3. From the third paragraph, infer where the photos were.

استنتج من الفقرة الثالثة أين كانت الصور

Writing Skill

ممارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)

1. My cousin Amira got married to Ayman.

تزوجت ابنة عمي اميرة من أيمن.

2. This is a photo of me next to Amira.

هذه صورة لي بجوار أميرة. كانت تحميز ات الزفاف جميلة جدا.

The wedding service was really beautiful.
 It was time for some food and fun.

حان الوقت لبعض الطعام والمتعة.

3. They were on Eman's phone.

2. The bride wore a fantastic dress, and everyone admired her beauty.

1. a. A beautiful wedding in Luxor

Answers:



SB Page (18)

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

An email about making arrangements

From

: Malak

To

: Tamara

. . .

ramara

Subject

: Some family photos

Hi Tamara,

How are you?

ا. حفل عيد ميلاد

٦. معا

۳. إرسال الرسائل

ع. جيد

ه. لیس جیدا مثل

٦. يضحك

۷. یحتضن ۸. یلتقی بـ

٩. ريما

ا. فتارين العرض

I'm sending you a photo of me at my grandma's birthday party⁽¹⁾ last week. The party was at my grandparents' house and our whole family was there. We all had a lot of fun together⁽²⁾!

The party showed me that sending messages⁽³⁾ to your friends and family is fine⁽⁴⁾, but it's not as good as⁽⁵⁾ spending time with them. You can laugh⁽⁶⁾ with them, hug⁽⁷⁾ them, and look in their eyes and really listen to them.

Do you have time to meet up with⁽⁸⁾ me one afternoon next week? Maybe⁽⁹⁾ on the weekend? We could go to the shopping mall. There's a shop there that has some beautiful clothes in its windows⁽¹⁰⁾. I could ask my parents for some money for the cinema or to go to a restaurant. My dad's friend Ali opened a new restaurant last month and it looks great. What do you think?

Write soon and tell me about your family.

Love,

Malak

Exercises on Lesson 1

Complete the following dialogue:

Sami and Hala ar	e talking about Hen	d's wedding	*
Sami : Did you go	o to Hend's wedding l	ast Friday?	
Hala : 10			
Sami : @			?
Hala : It took pla	ce at a big hotel in No	asr City	
Sami : 6			?
Hala : It was am			
Sami : What was	your favorite part of t	he wedding?	
			,
	ests dance and listen		
INDIANA MADAGAMAN AND A SAN			
/=	rrect answer from a,		
Onoose the co			
	Key Vocabulary	& SB Exercises	
1.The woman who	gets married is the		
	b. cake		d. groom
2.The man who get	s married is the	e ara în U	
a. groom	b. contract	c. marriage	d. reception
3.They invited man	yto the w	vedding party.	
a. services	b. contracts	c. guests	d. grooms
4.The marriage	is the paper that	t the people who ar	e getting married sign.
	b. contract	c. reception	d. service
5. We enjoyed the v	vedding (as we danced, ate o	cake and took photos.
a. reception	b. service	c. dress	d. guest
6. The wedding	is something	sweet that people	at a wedding eat.
a. service	b. contract	c. cake	d. groom
7. The bride looked	beautiful in her white	wedding	5.01
a. marriage	b. dress	c. aift	d. service

Unit 2 My network

8. A is a bi	g party where a man	and a woman ge	et married.		
a. dress	b. contract				
	Bit by Bit Ex	ercises			
9. Thetool	k many pictures of th	e bride and the g	room.		
a. photographer					
10. The bride and the gr					
	b. write		100		
11. The groom's					
a. cake	b. outfit	c. necklace	d. bracelet		
12.We add the suffix "	to the nou	ın "tradition" to m	ake the adjective.		
ay	bny	cal	dor		
13. The bride wore a gol	d around	d her neck on her	wedding day.		
a. reception					
14. Our aunts and uncles	s are our	-			
a. services	b. contracts	c. relatives	d. receptions		
15. The bride looked at w					
a. windows	b. doors	c. roofs	d. assistants		
The wedding dress w					
a. awful					
17. They made a tradition	nal reception for their	r wedding. "Tradi	tional" is an antonym		
for					
a. old-fashioned	b. modern	c. old	d. ancient		
	Expressions & Pr	repositions			
18. The wedding will place next Sunday evening.					
a. get	b. take	c. give	d. make		
19. The groom will meet	with the	wedding planner	tomorrow.		
a. for	b. down	c. on	d. up		
20. My sister and I	the housework	k yesterday.			
a. had	b. did	c. made	d. went		
Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:					
1. fantastic - groom - gal	labeya - <u>The</u> - his - la	ooked - in - tradit	ional		
	e ent. e. des el el el el electri.		er in comment to person.		
2. the - your - reception -	- What - part - was	favorito of?			
z. die godi - reception	- what - part - was -	idvorite - Or			



Language

قواعد لغوية

Possessive determiners and 's / s'

محددات وصيغ الملكية

• Possessive الملكية)، ويطلق عليها أيضا Possessive أو (محددات الملكية)، ويطلق عليها أيضا Possessive في الشيء. Adjectives أو (صفات الملكية) هي كلمات تستخدم لتدل على ملكية شخص او شيء لشيء. ولابد أن يأتي بعدها الإسم المملوك. وهذه الكلمات تختلف باختلاف ضمير الفاعل كما بالجدول:

Subject Pronoun ضمير الفاعل	Possessive Determiner محدد او صفة الملخية	Example	Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية	Example
I	my	This is my my car.	mine	The car is mine.
He	his	This is his house.	his	The house is his.
She	her	This is her room.	her	The room is hers.
It	its	This is its food.	_	-
We	our	This is our class.	our	The class is ours.
You	your	This isn't your pen.	your	The pen isn't yours.
They	their	These are their bags.		The bags are theirs.



- يجب عدم الخلط بين محددات أو صفات الملكية (التي لابد وأن يأتي بعدها الإسم المملوك) وبيــن ضمائـر الملكيــة (التي لا يأتي بعدها إســم). وتختلــف ضمائر الملكيــة باختلاف ضمير الفاعل كما يلى:

(الملكية) 'S / S'

- للدلالة على الملكية يمكن أيضا استخدام ال ('s/s') بعد الأسماء سواء كانت مفرد أو جمع:
- Ex. Did you see Ahmed's new smartphone?
- Ex. Here's the children's room.
 - أما مع الأسماء الجمع التي تنتهي بحرف (\$) نستخدم فقط ال (') بعد حرف ال (\$):
- Ex. This is my parents' house.
- Ex. Here's the kids' room.
- Ex. That is the ladies' toilet.
 - إما إذا كان اسم شخص منتهي بحرف (s) فيمكن استخدام (s') أو (') بعده للدلالة على الملكية.
 الشكلين صحيحين:
- Ex. I like Charles Dickens' / Dickens's novels so much.

			-
فقط:	ية (s') للكلمة الأخيرة	، في ملكية شيء واحد، يتم إضاف	و إذا اشترك شخصار
Ex. Let's attend Mary	and Tom's weddin	ıg.	
لكلمتين معاً:	ىلين، يتم إضافة (s') ل	, ملكية شخصين لشيئين منفص	• إذا أردنا التعبير عن
Ex. Look at Ahmed's a	nd Ali's cars!		
		إللوقت أو الفترات:	 یمکن أن تضیف (
Ex. I liked yesterday's	film.		
-	في يعمل به الشخص:	ضيف إليها (°s) تصبح المكان الذ	• بعض الوظائف إذا أ
butcher → butcher's	محل الجزارة	doctor → doctor's	عيادة الطبيب
		وْ') إلى الأماكن:	• يمكن أن نضيف (ه
Ex. Egypt's weather is	fine.		
		وْ') إلى بعض اسماء الاشياء:	• يمكن أن نضيف (
Ex. The ship's name is	the Titanic.		

Exercises on Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises 1. I'm sending you a photo of me at _____ grandma's birthday party last week. g. me b. my c. I d. mine 2. You can look in _____ eyes and really listen to them. a. they b. them c. theirs d, their 3. There's a shop there that has beautiful clothes in _____ windows. a. its b. his c. it d. him 4. Write soon and tell me about _. _ family. b. yours c. your d. mine 5. My _____ friend Ali opened a new restaurant last month. a. dad's b. dads c. dad. (1) d. dads' 6. This is my brother Yehia. _____ hair is short and curly. a. His b. He c. Him 7. My ____ house in Luxor is near the river. b. grandparents c. grandparents' d. grandparents's a. parent 8. This is our cat. Its name is Fluffy. _____ fur is brown. a. Fluffys' b. Fluffy's c. Fluffys d. Fluffy

9.	Hana is my cousin	mom is m	y Aunt Magda.	
	a. She	b. Hers	c. She's	d. Her
10.	Is this a photo of	cousin's wed	lding, Samir?	
	a. you	b. you're	c. your	d. yours
11.	The dres	s is beautiful!		
	a. bride	b. bride's	c. brides	d. brides'
		Bit by Bit Exe	rcises	
12.	Where is	book?		
	a. I	b. mine	c. me	d. my
13.	Here iste	eacher of English.		
		b. our		
14.	That isde	esk over there. She s	its at the back of	the class.
	a. her			d. she's
15.	The children like			
	a. they	b. theirs	c. their	d. them
16.	I bought this bicycle fr	rom Ali. Now it's		
GHO 504		b. mine		
17.	My father bought a ne			
2722		b. It		
18.	My new h			
	a. cousins'			d. cousin's
19.	I share the bedroom v		27	
	a. I	b. me	c. my	d. mine
20.	Theu bought	tickets for the the	entre	
/	a. they	b. them	c. theirs	d. their
2	Complete the senter	nces with the correct	form of the wor	d (s) in brackets:
1.	Hello! (Mi	ne) name is Ali.	4-60	
2.	Mr. Ali and Mr. Ahmed	d are my	(parents) friends	
3.	Haneen is	(I) youngest daught	er. sont	
4.	Is that(ye	esterday) newspaper	?	
5.	You can have some re	est in the	(girls) bedroom.	They are in the club.
6.	These are the	(children) toys.	Please, put them	i away.
7.	Ahmed bought a new	shirt(Hi	s) color is green.	That C g
8.	3. Please, give this book to Ahmed. It's(he).			

WHILE D

Speaking



Ask and answer questions about making arrangements.

• السؤال والجواب عن عمل الترتيبات:

Question

What are you going to do this evening?

ماذا تنوي ان تفعل هذا المساء؟

- Where will the wedding take place?

أين سيقام حفل الزفاف؟

- What are you going to wear for the wedding? ماذا سترتدی فی حفل الزفاف

Answer

 I'm going to go to my cousin's wedding.

سأذهب لحفل زفاف ابنة عمي

- It will take place in a big hotel. سيقام الحفل في فندق كبير.
- I'm going to wear my new dress. سأرتدي فستاني الجديد.

General Exercises (2) on Lessons 1& 2



Complete the following dialogue:

Sar	rah and Eman are talking about their arrangeme	ents for the weekend
	: Hi Eman, are you free this weekend?	
Eman	1: 1	Principal Princi
Sarah	1: I am thinking of going to the park. @	?
Eman	1 : Yes, I'll be happy to go with you! 🚳	?
Sarah	: We can play games and ride bikes around the p	ark.
Eman	: Do we need to buy tickets?	
Sarah	ı : <u>@</u>	. It's for free.
Eman	: Good! Can I bring my little sister?	the approximation rout. I am a bit a promise contractor to the interview.
Sarah	1 : 6 Wha	t time should we meet up?

2

Read and complete:

Eman: How about 2 pm?

Sarah: That's great!

my - reception - mine - outfits - guests

William

Last Sunday, I went to m	ny cousin's wedding . The	e wedding 🐠	were the
members of @	family. The 🔞	, where we enjoyed	d delicious
meals, was great. The bri	ide and the groom were	amazing in their 🙆	

غندره السيبائد

3	Choose the corre	ect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
1.	. The are	ound her neck was r	made of aold.	
		b. necklace	A CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRACTOR	d. reception
2.	She wore a beautifu			
		b. helmet		d. bracelet
3.	Mycar			
			100 L	d. photographers
4.	I posted a picture o			
		b. newspaper		
5.				in the shop
		b. doors		
6.	Whose book is this?	? - It'sb	ook.	
	a. I	b. my	c. mine	d. ours
7.	The students are we	orking on	_ project.	
	a. they	b. ours	c. them	d. their
8.	The dog is playing v	vith bal	l.	
	a. mine	b. hers	c. its	d. him
9.	The tou	s are in their room.		
	a. children			
10.	My car	is blue. She wants t	o change its color	
	a. sisters	b. sister	c. sisters'	d. sister's
4	Write a paragraph	of (80-90) words	on:	
		(00 00)	ELLING.	Market 19 to 19 to 19
		A wedding yo	u attended	(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)
-				
-				
-				
		i sorete		
- (ة كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية	لِجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية	- يمكنك من خلال ال
	- When was it?			
1	- Who were the gue	sts? -	Where did it take pl	ace?
			لعبارات الاتية	- يمكنك استخدا م ا
	- Last Sunday, I we	nt to		Condition and Charles
	- It took place in			

- The wedding guests were the





Key Vocabulary

Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

فردات الرئيسية	الما
----------------	------

المفردات الاضافية

يقدم

يتذكر

website (n)	موقع الكتروني على الانترنت	bank account (n)	حساب بنكي
true (adj)	حقيقي/صحيح	public (adj)	يمومد/ہاد
green (adj)	صديق للبيئة	online (adv. / adj)	من خلال أو متصلا بالانترنت
solar panels (n)	الواح الطاقة الشمسية	apartment (n)	شقة
personal informati	معلومات شخصیة (on (n	share (v. d)	يشارك
environmentally fr	iendly (adj) غير ضار بالبيئة	explore (d)	يستكشف

country (n)	بلد/ دولة	Italy (n)	ايطاليا
motorbike (n)	دراجة نارية	profile (n)	سيرة/لمحة
safe (<mark>adj)</mark>	آمن	honest (adj)	امین
village (n)	قُرية	walk (n)	جولة مشي
near (adv. / prep)	قریب من	the countryside (n)	الريف
grandparents (n)	الأجداد	recycled materials (n)	مواد معاد تدویرها
activity (n)	نشاط	details (n)	تفاصيل
furniture (n)	أثاث	address (n)	عنوان
rules (n)	قواعد	date of birth (n)	تاريخ الميلاد
well-known (adj)	معروف/مشهور	intercom (n)	جهاز الاتصال الداخلي
coast (n)	ساحل	alone (adj)	وحيد/بمفرده
island (n)	جزيرة	downstairs (adv)	في الطابق الأسفل
nearby (adj)	قريب	buzz (v. ed)	يتصل مستخدمًا

present (v. ed) اندونیسیا

fetch (ed) المملكة المتحدة

remember (v. ed)

Indonesia (n)

Canada (n)

the UK (n)

Expressions & Prepositions

the same of the sa			
flying kites	اللعب بالطائرات الورقية	when I was your age	عندماكنت في عمرك
go skiing	يذهب للتزلج	get money for	يحصل على أموال ثمنا لـ
do the housework	يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية	as long as	طالما أن
share information	يشارك معلومات	follow the rules	يتبع القواعد
It's better to	من الأفضل أن	make sure	يتأكد
Why don't you?	لمالا تفعل	in good condition	بحالة جيدة
sell things online	9	meet someone in per	son
	يبيعَ أشياء من خلال الانترنت	= -0	يقابل شخص بنفسه
that way	بهذه الطريقة	in fact	فى الحقيقة
got it	فهمتك	on the roof	على السطح
no problem	لا توجد مشكلة		
	The state of the s	7	

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

ICA PARAMETER STATE			recognisis and a second second	
Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Antonym / Oppo	المضاد site
true	حقيقي	correct / right	wrong / fake	خطأ/مزيف
public	رولد	common / open	private / secret	سري
near	قريب	far / remote	close / nearby	قريب
safe	آمِن	secure / guarded	insecure /unsafe	غير آمن
		0 ~		

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	usage	Example	
one un-	تكۇن عكس الصفة عدر عدد عدد	unsafe untrue	
in-	تكۇن عكس الصفة	insecure	
-er	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	buzzer pisenabn	
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى إسم	activity	
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	information 20 97	

Unit 2 My network

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة Present Past simple Past Participle sell sold sold يبيع buu يشترى bought bought send sent يرسل sent meet يقابل met met feed fed fed يطعم hang out hung out يتسكح hung out

Language Notes

﴿ مُلاحظَاتَ لَغُويةً ﴾

ملك من?..... Whose

- إذا كان الفعل الرئيسي بالسؤال الذي يبدأ بأداة الاستفهام (whose) هو (be)، فيمكن أن يأتي السؤال نأحد الشكلين التاليين:

· Whose + noun + be?

Ex. Whose book is this?

· Whose + be + noun?

Ex. Whose is this book?

2 near / nearby

near (prep)

- قريب (حرف جر) يأتى بعدها الاسم مسبوق بـ (the) أو صفة من صفات الملكية (my).

Ex. There is a lovely shop near the park.

nearby (adj / adv)

Ex. We could go to a nearby restaurant.

- على مسافة قريبة من. هنا (حال) بعد الفعل

Ex. A new restaurant opened nearby.

اسم جمع + few / a few +

– تأتي الكلمتان few / a few عنى (قليل(، ويأتي بعدهما دائما إسم جمع – ولكن هناك فرق في الاستخدام بين الكلمتين:

• few قليل جدا ولا يكفى:

Ex. She has few friends. So she feels lonely.

: قليل ولكنه يكفى a few •

Ex. She has a few friends. She enjoys her time with them.

معلومات information

– رغم ان كلمة information (وكذلك furniture) تبدو من معناها أنها جمع، إلا أنها دائما تعامل معاملة المفرد ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد:

Ex. Make sure all the information you give is true. (NOT: are true).

Check on Language Notes .

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. ____ pencil is this? It's mine.
- a. Who
 - b. Whose

d. Where

- 2. I'd like to go to a ____ cinema.
 - a. near
- b. nearlu
- c. nearby

c. Which

- d. nearside
- 3. We have got _____ tomatoes. Please, go to market and buy some.
 - a. a few
- b. few
- c. much
- d. manu
- 4. The information you gave me ____ useful.
 - a. are

- b. were
- C. Wds
- d. has



Reading



SB Page (20)



SB Page (20)





Isabella: Hello, my name's Isabella. I'm from Naples, a big city in the south of 1) Italy. I live with my mom, dad, and brother in an apartment. My grandparents live just across(2) the road! We have a car, but my brother usually gets around(3) on his motorbike. At the weekends, we like to get out of(4) the city to explore(5) the coast(6) and islands(7) near Naples.

Liam

: Hi, I'm Liam. I'm from Toronto in Canada. I live with my mom. brother. and two sisters. Oh, and our dog, Bobby! But our

grandparents live on the other side of Canada, so we only see them in the school holidays. Our house is big and has a garden. We have a car, too. It's fun hanging out with(8) my family. In the summer, we ride(9) our

bikes. In the winter, we go skiing!

Komang: Hi, my name's Komang. My family and I live on an Island in Indonesia. It's a big family! There's my mom, dad, brother and grandma, my aunt and uncle, and my three cousins. We all live together in a traditional house. We don't have a car, but we have two motorbikes. Our favorite thing to do together is to go to the beach to fly kites!

Alice

: Hello, My name is Alice and I live with my family in a village(10) in the UK(11). In my family, there's me and my sister, and our mom. Our grandparents live nearby (12), and we often all go for walks in the countryside(13) together. Our house is very new and modern(14) - I call it our «green house» because it's made of recucled (15) materials(16) and has solar panels(17) on the roof.

ا. حنوب ٢. على الجانب الآخر

من

۳. يتجول

٤. پخرج من

ه. پستکشف

٦. الساحل

٧. کزر

٨. يقضى وقتامع

٩. پرکب

ا. قرية

اا. المملكة المتحدة

۱۲. قرسا

۱۳. الريف

3ا. حديث

ها. معاد تصنعه

١٦. مواد خام

١٧. ألواح الطاقة

الشمسية



Selling things online

ا. سخ

۲. أثاث ۳. آمن

طالما
 م. يتبخ

۲. قواعد ۷. مشهور

٨. موقع

۹. یتذکر ۱۰. یتاکد

اا. معلومات

۱۲. حقيقي ۱۳. بحالة جيدة

۱٤. پشارك

ها. معلومات

شخصية

۱۸. تفاصیل

١٩. مكان عام

۲۰. یذهب بمفرده ۲۱. فی نفس عمرک

۲۱. تاریخ المیلاد۱۷. العنوان

Seif: Grandpa, why don't you sell(1) some of this old furniture(2) online? That

way you can get some money for it.

Grandpa: I don't know ... Is it safe(3)?

Seif: It's safe as long as (4) you follow (5) a few rules (6).

Grandpa: Can you tell me what they are?

Seif: I can, yes. First, always use a well-known (7) website (8)

to buy or sell something. Here's a good one. OK, what

do you want to sell?

Grandpa: How about this table?

Seif : Great. Can you give me your phone so I can

take a photo of it? Thanks. OK, the next thing to remember⁽⁹⁾ is: always be honest. Make sure⁽¹⁰⁾ all the information⁽¹¹⁾ you give about something you're

selling is true (12).

Grandpa: Well, this is a large table from the 1970s. It's in good

condition(13).

Seif : OK. Now, another very important rule is: don't

share(14)personal information(15), like your name, date

of birth(16), address (17), or bank account details(18).

Grandpa: Got it. What happens next?

Seif : Someone will send you a message if they want to buy the table.

Grandpa: And then will I meet the person to give it to them?

Seif: It's better to send it to them. In fact, that's another important rule. If

you have to meet someone, meet them in a public place (19) and don't

go alone (20).

Grandpa: Thanks, Seif. We never did this when I was your gae (21)!

a. Online c. How to 2. Why do p 3. From the a. private Writing Ski 1. Always us 2. Make sur 3. Don't sha	the following is a good title shopping safety be use a website dependent by and sell things conversation, we can infer	e for the text? Selling things onlin Self visits his grand online? that we should meet public الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل	people who we don't kr b. secret معارة الختابة (جمل ته ing. تي تذكرها. or bank account detai تاريخ ميلادك او تفاصيل ا ace and don't go alone	لا تشارك اي بيانات شخصية مثر لو انك مضطر لمقابلة شخص ه
		iťs easier.	S. Because	Answers: 1. b. Selling things online 3. b. public.
e e			2 ^ /	
				7
	Exer	cises on	Vocabulary	
Comp	lete the following	dialogue:		
Omar an	d Ayman are talki	ng about sellir	ng things online	ì
Omar	: I'm thinking of se	elling old clothe	s online. Do you	think it's safe?
Ayman	: 10			
Omar	: OK. What should	d I do?		
Ayman	: 2			
Omar	: What are these			
Ayman				
Omer				?
= 0.	: Don't give your p			
				?
-	: You're welcome.			
Choos	e the correct answ	ver from a, b, c	or d:	
	1 12 5 7 61	ocabulary & S	12 BOX 62	
1. Always	use a well-known _	to b	uy or sell someti	ning online.
a. count	ry b, co	mputer	c. website	d. market
2. Make su	ure the information (you give about :	something you're	selling is
a. true	b. fal	ke	c. wrong	d, bad
3. Never	persona	l information lik	e your name or	address.
a. take	b. ge	et	c. sell	d. share

4	. If you have to meet s	omeone in person, m	neet them in a	place.
	a. general	b. public	c. private	d. secret
5	. If you have to meet :	someone in person, o	don't go	13.
	a. lonely	b. funny	c. alone	d. true
		Bit by Bit Exe	ercises	
6	. You need to be caref	ul when you buy or s	ell something	•
	a. online	b. offline	c. outline	d. headline
7	. To be safe when you	ride a, y	ou must wear a l	nelmet.
	a. car	b. bus	c. motorbike	d. train
8	. To be healthy, our ho			
	a. earthly	b. environmentally	c. family	d. personally
9	. Goingor	weekends is one of	my favourite acti	vities.
	a. planning	b. paying	c. skiing	d. sleeping
10.	. We add the suffix "	" to the word "info	orm" to get the no	oun.
	dness	bless	cation	dy
11.	You can stay	online as long a	s you follow the	rules.
	a. healthy			
12.	We add the"	un" at the beginning	of the word "safe	" to get its opposite
	a. synonym	b. prefix	c. antonym	d. suffix
13.	Please, send this ord	er to my sister's	at 15, Or	abi Street, Giza.
	a. birth	b. account	c. address	d. date
14.	He used the	to call for his sec	retary in the othe	er office.
	a. internet	b. intercom	c. website	d. newspaper
15.	My sister's	of birth is February	, 12, 2010.	
		b. message		
16.	My father has more th	nan one bank	where he so	aves his money.
	a. account	b. website	c. date	d. address
		Expressions & Pre	epositions	
17.	We plan to	skiing in the moun	tains this winter.	
	a. do	b. make	c. go	d. get
18.	You can sell your old	bike and get money	it.	
	a. on	b. for	c. to	d. with
19.	At school, you should	the rule	S.	2 4 4000 PEW 22 2
	a. tell		c. say	d. study
20.	I finally met my online			
	g. on	b. with	c. for	d in



Language

قواعد لغوية

Can and will for requests.

- يمكن استخدام الأفعال الناقصة (can) / (will) عند التعبير عن الطلب:

? فعل في المصدر .inf + فاعل + Can / Will + لعاد أ

- Ex. Can you take a message, please?
- Ex. Will you carry this for me, please?
- Ex. Will you lend me some money?
- Ex. Can I borrow your pen?
 - عادة لا نستخدم (can) في الرد سواء بالقبول أو الرفض ويمكن أن نستخدم:
- Ex. Yes, of course. Ex. Sure, no problem.
 - عند رفض الطلب عادة ما نعطي سبب حتى يبدو الأمر أكثر تهذيبًا:
- Ex. Sorry, I can't at the moment. I'm studying.
- Ex. No, sorry, I'm busy. I'll do it later.

Exercises on Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1you	help me with my lapto	op, please?	
a. Can	b. Don't	c. Never	d. Might
2 you	u lend me your pencil?	Lifia	
a. May		c. Will	d. Have
3 you	u answer the phone, pl	lease?	
a. Has	b. Can	c. Must	d. Did
4 you	u feed the dog this eve	ning, please?	
a. Have	b. Should	c. Might	d. Can
5 you	ı fetch my coat, please	? It's in the hall.	
a. Will	b. Is	c. Have	d. Did
6 you	a carry these bags for a	me, please?	
a. Should	c. Must	c. Did	d. Can
7. I'm downstairs	you open	the door, please?	
a. Must	c. Does	c. Can	d. Might
8 you	carry these bags for r	ne, please?	
a. Are	c. Will	c. Has	d. Does



Bit by Bit Exercises

9 yo	u help me with my hon	nework?	
a. Have	b. Does	c. Can	d. May
10 you	u turn on the fan, pleas	se?	
a. Will	b. Might	c. Shall	d. Does
11. It's very hot in h	nere you	open the window, p	olease?
a. Should	b. Do	c. Must	d. Can
12yo	u lend me some mone	ey, please?	
a. Are	b. Will	c. Should	d. Do
Complete the	sentences with the c	orrect form of the	word(s) in brackets:
1 (Mu	ust) you lend me your	ruler, please?	
2. Excuse me, sir.	(Should)	you say the answe	er again, please?
3(D	o) you tell me how to g	go to the post office	e, please?
4. Please, Ali.	(Must) you w	ait for me?	
5. Please, Mom.	(Did) you h	nelp me with this qu	uestion?
	Spo	eaking	
Making and re	esponding to reques	ts (Will / Can)	
- Can you + inf. / V	Vill you?		• تقديم الطلب والرد عليه: هل يمكن ان ؟
Ag	reeing .	Disc	agreeing
- Yes, of course	وبالطبق	- Sorry, I can't.	آسف لا يمكنني
- Sure! No proble	بالتأكيد لا مشكلة em	- No. Sorry I'm b	لا . آسف أنا مشغول. usy

General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4

10	
111	
	9

Complete the following dialogue between:

Baher wants to sell his old car.

Baher: Hi Maged. I v	vant to sell my old	d car.	
Maged : Hi Baher. 🐽			?
Baher: That's a good	l idea! @	***************************************	?
Maged: Yes, I often b			
Baher : Is it easy to s	ell things online?		
Maged : 📵	***************************************		res and wait for buyers.
Baher: Will you help	me post the pictu	res?	
Maged : @	•••••	re ⁸	
Baher: They are on n			
Maged : OK. 👸			seec
Baher : Thank you ve			
Read and complet	e:		
personal -	apartment - well-	known - intercom	- address
If you want to sell your of Don't share any	information ab	out you, especially !	
Choose the correc			
1. I know this boy, but I	can't	his name.	
a. sign	b. celebrate	c. remember	d. enjoy
2. If you are hungry, yo	ou can	this pizza with you	r sister.
a. share	b. follow	c. sell	d. find
3. We must follow the _	in the	school library.	
a. addresses	b. dates	c. photos	d. rules
4. Most people spend t	heir weekends in	the new	park.
a. special	b. public	c. private	d. safe

5.	You can find the infe	ormation you need or	our website		
	a. online	b. hotline	c. deadline	d. offline	
6.	She felt afraid walki	ing home	at night.		
	a. old	b. high	c. alone	d. private	
7.	To keep your mone	y , keep i	t in your bank ac	count.	
	a. far	b. safe	c. near	d. public	
8.	you ple	ase pass me the salt	?		
	a. Must	b. Should	c. Might	d. Will	
9.	you ser	nd me the email tonig	ht?		
	a. Can	b. Have	c. May	d. Do	
10.	you ope	en the window for sor	ne fresh air?		
	a. Have	b. Does	c. Will	d. Must	
4	Write a paragrapl	n of (80-90) words o	n:		
				ه في آخر الوحدة)	رمجاب عن
		"Buying things	s online".		
-					
-					
-					
-					
-					
		كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية	ع <mark>ن الأسئلة الآتي</mark> ة	مكنك من خلال الإج	i –
		ng and selling things of	nline?		
	- Did you buy or s	ell something online? to sell it?			
	WA161	Line by bushes as	ببارات الاتية	بمكنك استخدام الع	į –
19.0		selling things online be			
	Last month, I war	ited to sell my bicycle.			



Key Vocabulary

0.0	
الائسية	مفيدات

website (n)	موقع الكتروني	informal (adj)	غيررسمي
chatting (n)	الدردشة	symbol (n)	رمز
photography (n)	التصوير	emoji (n)	رمز تعبيري
challenge (n)	تحدِّي/صعوبة	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنی
online friendship (n)	صداقة عبر الانترنت	congratulate (d)	يهنئ
communication (n)	التواصل	congratulate (d)	يهنئ
formal (adj)	رسمي	misunderstanding (n)	سوء فهم

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

forum (n)	منتدى	bro (n)	اخ/صدیق
topic (n)	موضوع	smiley face	وجه ضاحك
nature (n)	قحيبكاا	congratulations (n)	تهانینا
specific theme	موضوع محدد	real (adj)	حقيقي/واقعي
close friend (n)	صديق مُقَرُب	personal (adj)	شخصی
schoolwork (n)	الواجب المدرسي	several (adj)	ععدته
comment (n)	تعليق	book club (n)	نادي الكتاب
offline (adv / adj)	غير متصل بالانترنت	face-to-face (adj)	وجها لوجه
understanding (n)	فمم/تفاهم	نة خاصة special (adj)	خاص/ذو أهمية أو مكا
suddenly (adv)	فجأة	discuss (ed)	يصف
importance (n)	أهمية	handle (d)	یتناول/یتعامل مع
though (conj)	بالرغم من	reply (n / ied)	رد/يردُ مُناسِّد الله
hobby (n)	هواية	decide to (ed)	يقرر أن
experiences (n)	خبرات	pass (ed)	ريمر



Expressions & Prepositions

make a friend online		deal with	يتعامل مع	
نترنت	يتخذ صديقا من خلال الا	reply to	یرد علی	
do a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع	hear from	يتلقى رسالة من	
go online	يتصل بالانترنت	interested in	مهتم	
answer a message	يرد على رسالة	get a comment from	يأتيه تعليق من	
feel worried / sad	يشعر بالقلق/بالحزن	of her age	في نفس عمرها	
make plans	يقوم بعمل خطط	have a lot in common		
social media account		رکة	لديهماأشياء كثيرة مشتر	
اصل الاجتماعي	حساب على وسائل التو	(be) there for	یکون بجانب او مساندا لـ	
a 15-year-old girl	فتاة عمرها ١٥ عام	proud of	فخورب	
atop student	طالب متفوق	(be) over	ينتهي	
handle a situation	يتعامل مغ موقف	focus on	يركز على	

Definitions

website	موقع الكتروني	a place on the internet where you can find information or do activities
chatting	الدردشة	talking to someone in a friendly way, often online
photography	التصوير	the art or practice of taking pictures with a camera
challenge	تحدِّي / صعوبة	something that is difficult and tests your ability
communication	on التواصل	the act of talking or writing to share information with others

A ST	nonyms	& Antonyms	. 4	الكلمات وعكسها
Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Op	المضاد posite
challenge	تحدي	difficulty	ease	سهولة
meaningful	ذو معنی	expressive	meaningless	لیس له معنی
real	حقيقي	factual	unreal	غير حقيقي
online	على الانترنت	on the internet	offline / face-to الوجه	-face غیر متصل/وجھ
young	صغير في السن	green / junior	old / adult	كبير في السن
formal	رسمى	official	informal	غيررسمى
				/

المات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix البوادئ واللواحق	usage الاستخدام	Example مثال
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى إلى إسم	understanding
in-	تكؤن عكس الصفة	informal
-al	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	personal
-mis	تكوّن عكس الفعل	misunderstand
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	communication
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى إسم	activity
-ly	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	friendly

Conjugations of	Irregular Verbs		تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
make	يكۇن/يصنع	made	made
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
take	يأخذ/يلتقط	took	taken
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
become	يصبح	became	become
deal	يتعامل	dealt	dealt
understand	توهما	understood	understood

Language Notes



1) a 30-day challenge / a 15-year-old girl

- لاحظ الصيغة السابقة – صفة وتتكون من(رقم + شرطة + اسم مفرد):

Ex. She is a 15-year-old girl = She is 15 years old.

Ex. We have five-minute breaks between lessons.

2) stop + v -ing

- ياتي الفعل stop متبوعا بصيغة v —ing متبوعا بصيغة stop باتي الفعل

e Comme

married as a

Ex. My father stopped smoking two years ago.

Ex. Will you please stop making noise?

ِ مِياْتِي الفعل stop متبوعا بـ to + inf بمعنى يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء:

Ex. On his way home, he stopped to buy bread.

Unit 2 My network

(3) special / private

– تأتي كلمة special بمعنى (له مكانة خاصة/مميز)، بينما تأتي كلمة private بمعنى (خاص من حيث الملكية)؛

Ex. My birthday is a special day for me. Ex. Don't read my private messages

(4) let + مفعول به + let:

- يأتي الفعل let متبوعا بمفعول به ثم فعل بالمصدر :

Ex. Let me help you with these bags. Ex. The teacher let her use a calculator.

some time / sometimes

Ex. I need some time to relax.

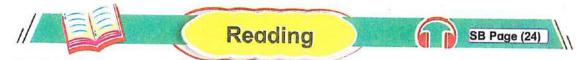
• sometimes

احيانا

Ex. I sometimes feel nervous.

Check on Language Notes V

Choose the correc	t answer from a, b	o, c or a:	
1. I need to go on a			
a. five day holiday		b. five day-holi	day
c. five-day-holiday		d. five-day holi	day
2. We bought	for the concert.		383
a. a 20-pound tickets	3	b. 20-pound tic	kets
c. 20 pound-tickets		d. 20-pound tic	ket
3. I stoppedt		rs. I read the news	online.
a. buying	b. buy	c. bought	d. to buy
4. We have a	guest this evening	. The manager of a	our company!
a. private	b. public	c. special	d. social
5. I like traveling in my	car. I dor	n't like public trans	port.
a. special	b. private	c. public	d. general
6. Will you please let m	eyour pl	none for a minute?	C n ecu
a. borrow	b. borrowing	c. borrowed	d. borrows
7. We meet d	t the club.		
g, some time	b. some times	c. sometimes	d. something



Read the following, then answer the questions below:

FRIENDS ONLINE



Salma, a 15-year-old girl from Egypt, loved photography 1). She often shared her photos on a website(2) for young photographers(3). One day, she got a comment(4) from Ashly, a girl of her age from Australia, who liked her photos. They started chatting and found out they had a lot in common⁽⁵⁾. They both loved taking pictures of nature⁽⁶⁾. Soon, they were talking every day, and decided to do a 30-day photography challenge(7) together. Each day, they had to take a photo on a specific theme(8) and share it. They enjoyed the challenge and became closer friends(9).

However, one day, Ashly suddenly stopped answering Salma's messages. Salma felt worried. She sent several messages, but there was no reply. Salma felt sad that their friendship might be over(10).

Salma couldn't focus on(11) her schoolwork or her photography. After talking with her mother, Salma decided to send a message, letting Ashly know that she was there for her(12). She wrote, "Hi Ashly, I hope you're okay. If you need someone to talk to, I'm here for you." A few more days passed, and finally, Ashly replied. She explained that she had been dealing with(13) some difficult family news and needed some time offline(14). Salma was happy to hear from Ashly again. They talked about what had happened and made plans to continue their challenge.

ا. التصوير ٦. موقع الكتروني

٣. مصورون

ع. تعلىق

ه. لديهم الكثير من القواسم المشتركة

٦. الطبيعة

٧. تحدی

٨. موضوع محدد

9. أصدقاء مقربون

ا. ينتهى

اا. يركز في

۱۲. کانت تدعمها

۱۳. تتعامل مع

١٤. غير متصل بالانترنت

ol. eag

١٦. تواصل

١٧. صداقة

۱۸. ذات معنی

Salma and Ashly now had a better understanding(15) of the importance of communication(16) and being there for each other. They knew that their friendship(17), though online, was real and meaningful(18).

Reading Skill

معارة الكتابة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

- 1. Which of the following is a good title for the text?
 - a. A photography challenge
- b. Making friends online
- c. Comon family problems
- d. The importance of friendship
- 2. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence.
- 3. From the conversation, we can infer that online friendship is

Writing Skill

معارة الكتابة أجمل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)

- 1. Salma decided to do a 30-day photography challenge. قررت سلمي القيام بتحدي في التصوير مدته ثلاثون يوما.
- 2. Salma felt worried and sent several messages, but there was no reply.

شعرت سلمي بالقلق وأرسلت عدة رسائل، ولكن لا يوجد رد.

3. I hope you're Ok. If you need someone to talk to, I'm here for you.

آمل أن تكون بخير . لو أنك تحتاج لشخص ما للتحدث معه، أنا هنا من أجلك.

3. Online friendship can be meaningful.

2. Salma was keen to know what was wrong with Ashly

1. b. Making friends online

Answers:



Complete the following dialogue:

Happy birthday⁽¹⁾ to my fantastic⁽²⁾ Mido. He's 15 today! He's a great brother because he's always there for me and our little sister when we need help. Thanks bro!

And of course, we all know he's a top student⁽³⁾ and also an amazing football player - 16 goals last season⁽⁴⁾ for our school team. Well done Mido, I'm proud of you⁽⁵⁾. Have a great birthday⁽⁶⁾!

ا. عيد ميلاد سعيد ۲. رائغ ۳. طالب متفوق

> ع. موسم ه. اُنا فخور بك

7. أتمنى لك عيد ميلاد سعيد

Exercises on Vocabulary

-	
Manal a	nd Basma are talking about online friendship
Manal	: Hi Basma. Have you ever made a friend online?
Basma	: Yes, 10last year
Manal	: That's great! @
Basma	: We met on a website and started talking.
Manal	: 63
Basma	: Yes, we chat almost every day.
Manal	: Do you think online friendships are different from real ones?
Basma	: @, but you can still make a friendship online
Manal	: Would you like to meet your online friend in person someday?
Basma	: Yes, we talked about visiting each other in the future.
Manal	: That sounds exciting. Just be careful and stay safe.
Basma	: For sure! 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. A/An is activities.	s a place on the inte	rnet where you ca	n find information or do
a. wedding	b. intercom	c. website	d. reception
2 means	talking to someone	in a friendly way,	often online.
a. Chatting	11/20	b. Describing	
c. Understanding		 d. Commentir 	ng
3 is the o	art or practice of tak	ing pictures with a	camera.
a. Challenge		c. Photograph	ny <mark>d.</mark> Sharing
4.It was a big	for me to come	first in the race.	
a. information	b. challenge	c. loss	d. problem
5 is the d	act of talking or writi	ng to share inform	ation with others.
a. Emoji	b. Service	 Contract 	d. Communication

Bit by Bit Exercises

We use the prefix ".	to get th	e opposite of the	word "formal".
a. im-	b. dis-	c. in-	d. un-
7. She sent me a smil	ey facein	her message.	
a. prefix	b. emoji	c. sunonum	d. suffix
8. I asked a question	on the online	, and many pe	eople from different
countries answered	my question.		
a. autumn	b. season	c. gift	d. forum
9. Online	can start when two pe	ople chatting hav	e things in common.
a. emoji	b. website	c. friendship	d. challenge
10. We use the suffix "_	" to get the	adjective from th	e noun "meaning".
aful	bness	cal	dion
11. The word "online" is	an antonym for		
a. headline	b. offline	c. deadline	d. hotline
The teacher gave us	s instructio	ns for the test, wh	nich helped us a lot.
a. public	b. unclear	c. crazy	d. specific
Many people left nic	e on my	post on Facebook	ς.
 receptions 	b. weddings	c. comments	d. services
14. The teacher has a g	ood of yo	ur problem and w	ill help you.
 a. understanding 		b. celebrating	
c. chatting		- Indulation	iding
15. Bad communication	among people often o	auses	a
a. friendship	b. misunderstandin	g c. celebration	d. meaning
My friendship with m	ıy American pen friend	John is	, though online.
a. offline	Heritage Committee Committ	c. careful	d. meaningful
17. I have a/an	meeting with my f	riends every weel	kend. We meet at the
club.			
a. face-to-face		b. online	ma impart I I
c. faraway		d. environmenta	lly-friendly
	Expressions & Pro	epositions	
18. She the	situation very well wit	hout asking for he	elp.
a. dealt	b. chatted	c. handled	d. signed
19.I a friend	online who lives in Jo	apan.	
a. dealt	b. did	c. told	d. made
20. My best friend Ali and	d I have a lot in	, like music	and movies.
a. private	b. common	c. special	d. public
21.They onli	ine to do a research.	opi i strancagnici i ang	Party - Control of Section 1987 (Sec. 1987)
	b. went	c. did	d. had
22.I usually	worried about my grai		
a. feel	b. fall		d. fail

Unit 2 My network

10							5
(5)	Rearrange	the	words	to	make	correct	sentences:

1. decided - a - holiday - take - to - five - day - I

2. common - and - I - a lot - friend - have - my - in

Speaking

Useful language used on social media

• تعبير ات لغوية هامة تستخدم على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي:

Congratulations!	تهانينا/أجمل التهاني
Well done!	احسنت
I'm so proud of you.	أنا فخور جدا بك
I'm so happy for you.	أنا مسرور جدا من أجلك
Have a great day!	أتمنى لك يوما رائعا

General Exercises (1) on Lessons 5 & 6

Complete the following dialogue:

Rami passed his exam

Rami : Dad! I'm very happy!

Father : 1

Rami : I passed my exam!

Father : 2 ! That's amazing!

Rami : Thank you! I worked really hard.

Father: 8

Rami : The exam was really difficult.

Father : Well done! I'm so proud of you.

Rami : I'm so happy it's finally over.

Father : You're welcome. 6

Read and complete the text with the words from the list:

nature - close - schoolwork - Photography - challenge

I love spending time in nature with my ① _____ friend. We go to the forest to enjoy ② ____ in the forest is very beautiful. We love to take pictures of trees and flowers. It's a ② ____ to find the best things to take pictures of.

6	Choose the cor	rect answer from a	, b, c or d:	
1.	I got very good	on my ne	w picture on Face	book.
		b. dislikes		d. networks
2.		ne to check my ema	ils every day.	
	a. do	b. make	c. go	d. take
3.	My father is alway	s for me	e when I need hel	p.
	a. that	b. there		d. this
4.	The lesson will be	by 4 pr	n. Then we can go	o to the club.
	a. about	b. under		d. over
5.	You need to	on your lesso	ons this week.	
		b. chat		d. sign
6.	Let'sp	olans to go to the po	rk this weekend.	
	a. make		c. do	d. comment
4	Write a paragrap	oh of (80-90) words	on:	
		(a co) in or dio	Militar da	
				(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)
		"Making	friends".	
		· • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
				,
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
		-		
	How important	تابة الفقرة الإنسانية على الأعمر المسام	ابة عن الأسئلة الاتية ك	– يمكنك من خلال الإج
	- What is a true fr	s making friends?		
	- Who is your bes			
	vino is gour bes	st menu :	# . T. III	
			نارات الانته	- يمكنك استخدام الع
	Friends are			
	They are always t	here,		
	They make life mo	ore		
	A true friend is th	e one who		

Review on Unit 2

Key Vocabulary

•	
bride (n) سويد	wedding reception (n) حفل الزفاف
groom (n) سیبد	wedding cake (n) تورتة الزفاف
wedding guests (n) ضيوف حفل الزفاف	wedding dress (n) فستان الزفاف
marriage contract (n) عقد الزواج	bank account (n.) حساب بنکي
network (n) شبکة	public (adj.) ممومي
website (n.) موقع الكتروني على الانترنت	online (adv. / adj.) من خلال أو متصلا بالانترنت
true (adj.) حقیقی/صحیح	apartment (n.)
green (adj) صديق للبيئة	share (d) يشارك
solar panels (n) الواح الطاقة الشمسية	explore (d)
personal information (n.) معلومات شخصية	formal (adj.)
environmentally friendly (adj.) غير ضار بالبيئة	informal (adj.) غير رسمي
chatting (n.)	symbol <mark>(n.)</mark> رمز
photography (n.)	emoji (n.) ومزتبيري
challenge (n.) تحدِّي/صعوبة	meaningful (adj.) دومعنی
online friendship (n.) صداقة عبر الانترنت	congratulate (d) يمنئ
communication (n.) التواصل	

Language

قواعد لغوية

Possessive determiners and 's / s'

محددات وصيغ الملكية

• Possessive Determiners أو (محددات الملكية)، ويطلق عليها أيضا Possessive أو (محددات الملكية)، ويطلق عليها أيضا Adjectives أو (صفات الملكية) هي كلمات تستخدم لتدل على ملكية شخص او شيء لشيء. ولابد أن يأتي بعدها الإسم المملوك. وهذه الكلمات تختلف باختلاف ضمير الفاعل كما يلي:

Subject Pronoun	Possessive Determiner	Possessive Pronouns
ضمير الفاعل	محدد او صفة الملكية	ضماثر الملكية
	(مسابقد وبته)	(بدون اسم بعدها)
I	my	mine
He	his	his
She	her	hers
It was	its	ili tion 21 a lizio altri vina vina più
We	our	ours
You	your	yours
They	their	theirs

	المكية 's / s' للمكية book play ed serellance
's	للدلالة على الملكية يمكن أيضا استخدام ال ('s/s') بعد الأسماء سواء كانت مفرد أو جمع:
s'	أما مع الأسماء الجمع التي تنتهي بحرف (s) نستخدم فقط ال (') بعد حرف ال (s):
'/'s	إما إذا كان اسم شخص منتهي بحرف (s) فيمكن استخدام (s') أو (') بعده للدلالة على
	(الملكية. الشكلين صحيحين

- Ex. Did you see Ahmed's new smartphone?
- Ex. Here's the children's room.
- Ex. This is Dickens' / Dickens's novel.

Can and will for requests.

- يمكن استخدام الأفعال الناقصة(can) / (will) عند التعبير عن الطلب:
- Ex. Can you take a message, please?
- Ex. Will you carry this for me, please?
- Ex. Will you lend me some money?
- Ex. Can I borrow your pen?



Daragraphs& Emails

فقيات ليشائية وتسائل بربد الكتيفيون ويصومون ويربي بالمحرق

Lessons 1&2

Last Sunday, I went to my friend's sister's wedding. It took place in a big hall. Both the bride's and the groom's relatives came together to celebrate the wedding. The bride and the groom were happy to sign the marriage contract and cut the wedding cake. They were fantastic in their beautiful outfits. The bride wore gold bracelet and a necklace, and the groom was fantastic in his traditional galabeya. The quests loved the reception where they are meals and danced very much.

Lessons 3&4

"Buying things online"

The internet has made buying and selling things very easy. If you want to sell something online, just share its pictures with some information about it and wait for buyers. Make sure that all the information you share is true. Be careful and don't share any personal information about yourself, like date of birth, address or bank account details. If you have to meet the buyer, meet them in a public place and don't go alone.

Lessons 5&6

Friends are like stars. They are always there, shining brightly in our life. They make life more enjoyable and meaningful. Without friends, one always feels alone and lonely. A true friend is the one who is always there for you when you need help. You can make face-to-face or online friendships. Online friendships can sometimes be very good. Last month, while I was chatting with someone from Canada, I found out that we have many things in common, like reading books and listening to music.

Al Azhar

Weekends are special to me. On weekends, I can do many things like visiting my grandparents, going to the sports club, meeting my friends or staying home to relax. On weekends, I sometimes go out with my family to the public park where we can enjoy our time there playing games and having snacks. we can go to the zoo to see the animals there. Weekends are very important for everyone to have and enjoy after a whole week of hard work.

General Exercises Unit 1

An email to congratulate your friend for passing his exams

ert benoit in

To: basem200@yahoo.com From: salah2010@gmail.com.

Subject: My favorite sport

Hi, Basem,

How are you? I'm so happy to hear that you passed your exams with good marks. I know you're a top student and I'm so happy for you and very proud of you. How were the exams? Were they difficult or easy? How did you prepare them? Please, write soon. Have a great day!

A: Listening



a. Information

b. Pollution

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

بال	الكت	آخر	نماع	الاسا	نص
					_

1. What gives us light and heat? The moon b. The stars c. The sun d. The earth 2. What goes around the Earth? a. The sun b. The moon c. The stars d. The sea **B:** Language Functions Complete the following dialogue: Amin asks Salem to go with him to the beach : Hi Salem. Would you like to come with me to the beach? Amin : Sounds great! 📵 Salem Amin : Don't forget your towel, snacks and drinks! Salem Amin : Perfect! We can play volleyball later. : Alright! Salem : Wow, this beach is so beautiful! Amin Salem : I know. Let's build a sandcastle. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. In the wedding, the _____was beautiful in her wedding dress. a. groom b. guest c. bride d. marriage 2. The groom wore a traditional galabeya. The opposite of "traditional" is a. modern b. old c. ancient d. fantastic 3. The bride and the groom signed the marriage a. communication b. understanding c. celebration d. contract 4. The prefix "_____" is used to get the opposite of the adjective "formal". a. imb. inc. und. dis-5. _____ is very important between the members of a family.

c. Question

d. Communication



C: Reading Comprehension



Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

My name is Hassan. I'm in grade 1 in a prep school. My school life is fun and busy. Every morning, I go to school at 8:00 am. My favorite subject is science because I love doing experiments. I also enjoy math and learning new things every day. During break, I play with my friends in the playground. After school, I attend a chess club where we practice and play matches. My teachers are kind and helpful, and they always encourage us to do our best. I enjoy school because I get to learn, make friends, and participate in different activities. It's a place where I grow and have fun.

A. Answer the following				
1- What is Hassan's	favorite subject in	school and why?		
2- How does Hassar	<i>E</i>			
3- What does the un	derlined word "the	y" refer to?		
B. Choose the correct	answer from a, b	, c or d:		
4. What time does Has	27 12 NOSS-211, 12 NO		1 40 00	
a. 7:00 am	b. 8:00 am	c. 9:00 am	d. 10:00 am	
5. The underlined word	w incharactive states		d look for	
a. give up	b. look after	c. take part	d. look for	
Where does Hassara. At school.	The same of the sa	club.c. At home.	d At the gum	
	The second secon		The same of the sa	
Reorder the follow				
1.at - grandparents' - lu		- 		
2.a motorbike - has - fa	mily - a car - Who	<u>se</u> - and ?		
3.married - My - to - Ay	man Amira - cous	sin		
4.with - two - I - brother	rs - sat - table - at.			
				_
	D: W	iting		
Write a paragraph	of FIVE (5) sente	ences on:		
	"My wee	ekends"	جاب عنه قبل الاختبار)	(0
				5



A: Listening



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. What does Sarah la	ove to do?		ž
a. To watch movie	es.	b. To read bo	oks.
c. To play games.		d. To cook.	
2. Where does Sara	h go every weekend?		
a. To the park.	b. To the zoo.	c. To the libra	ry. d. To the cinema.
3. What type of book	ks does Sarah enjoy t		
a. Adventure.	b. Science.	c. Comedy.	d. Romance.
4. What is Sarah's d	ream?	m. 15	
a. To be a teacher		b. To travel ar	ound the world.
c. To write her own	n book.	d. To become	a doctor.

B: Language Functions



Complete the following dialogue:

Amal	and Hoor are talking about a visit to the museum:	
Amal	: Hi Hoor, did you go to the museum yesterday?	
Hoor	: 1 was r	eally cool!
Amal		- 10
Hoor	: I saw some old paintings and statues.	
Amal	: That sounds interesting. 🚳	?
Hoor	: Yes, I learned about ancient Egupt.	
Amal	: That's great! @	
Hoor	: You should go. It's really exciting.	
Amal	: OK. I'll ask my father to take me to the museum next weekend.	
Hoor	: Well. 6	
1	THE STATE OF THE S	,clv



Read and complete the text with words from the list:

her - delicious - guests - hers - celebrating

Yesterday, I went to my cousin's wedding. It was a big party with lots of ① ______.

Everyone was happy and ② _____. They were dancing and eating ③ _____ food.

It was a special day for my cousin and ④ _____ groom.



C: Reading Comprehension



Read the following, then answer the questions:

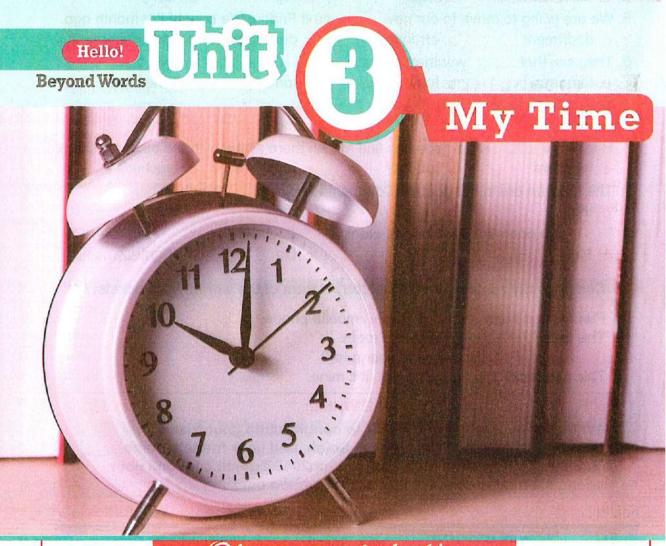
My name is Hossam. Last weekend, my family and I went to see the New Capital City of Egypt. It was a long drive, but it was worth. The city is really big, beautiful, and modern. <u>Its</u> buildings are tall, and the streets are <u>wide</u> and clean. There are lots of parks and green spaces, too. We had a great time in the New Capital City.

We also watched the Iconic Tower which is the tallest building in Egypt and Africa. Finally, we went to a shopping mall and bought some souvenirs.

It was a really fantastic day which I can't forget.

A.	Answer the following	g questions:			
1.	How did Hossam feel	about the New Cap	ital City?		
2.	What was the most in	teresting thing Hoss			
3.	Would you like to visit		ty? Why / why no	t?	
В.	Choose the correct of	ınswer from a, b, c	or d:		
4.	What is the main idea	of this story?			
	a. The history of Egyp	ot	b. A fun day		
	c. The Suez Canal		d. The Grand E	gyptian Museum	
5.	The underlined word '	'Its" in the text refers	s to		
	a. The great Pyramid	S	b. the New Capital City		
	c. The Cairo Tower		d. a big mosque	e	
6.	The underlined word '	' wide " is an antonyn	n for		
	a. narrow	b. big	c. delicious	d. fast	
		D: Vocabulary a	nd Structure		
9	Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:		
1.	My sister is a great	She takes w	onderful pictures	of nature.	
	a. teacher	b. photographer	c. receptionist	d. engineer	
2.	I sent a smiley face	to my friend	wishing her a hap	ppy birthday.	
	a. contract	b. marriage	c. service	d. emoji	
3.	The park is	a fantastic place to	visit on weekend	S.	
	a. public	b. special	c. private	d. general	

4. The s	uffix ch	anges the verb comm	nunicate into a no	un.
aful		bless	city	dion
5. We ar	e going to mov	e to our new	next Friday. We b	oought it a month ago.
a. apo	artment	b. arrangement	c. developmen	t d. encouragement
6. They s	say that	weather is nice.		
a. tom	norrow	b. tomorrows	c. tomorrow's	d. tomorrows'
7. This's	Omar's idea. I	t isn't		
a. me		b. I		d. myself
8. Here's	the roo	om. You can find Mr.	Ali there sitting w	rith the other teachers.
a. tea	chers'	b. teacher	c. teachers	
9. The ch	nildren are in tl	ne garden. Call them	to havelu	ınch.
a. the	J	b. them	c. their	d. theirs
		door for me, please?		
a. Mus	st	b. Will	c. Do	d. Might
(6) Comp	lete the sente	nces with the correc	t form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
		(me) mobi		
		(parents) room.	to priorio.	
3	(Do) yo	u lend me your ruler?	?	
4. This p	en is not	(you). It's mir	ne.	
		E Writi	ng	
Write	an e-mail of	(80-90) words to co		friend on
pass pass	ing his exam	s. Your name is Sale	ah, and your frie	nd's name
is Ba	sem. Your e-i	nail address is salc	th2010@gmail.c	om and your
friend	d's e-mail add	lress is basem200@	yahoo.com	
0	New Mess	age		
To	:			C- P
From				Cc Bcc
Subject				
		.23 to 5	i. F.	



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

An email about ways to spend your free time; A letter to a problem page; An unusual Hobby; *a short story*.

Listening:

A dialogue about free-time activities.

Writing:

a forum post about finding friends with similar interests.

Speaking:

Talking about ways to spend your free time.

Language:

The present continuous tense; Subject and object pronouns





المفردات الرئيسية

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	walk in nature	لطبيعة	يمشي في ا
hobby (n)	هواية	help in community		يساعد في
unusual (adj)	غير معتاد	"to do" list	pla	 قائمة المد
write a journal	يدون مذكرات	shopping mall (n)	S	سوق تجار
evening classes	دروس مسائية	swimming pool (n)	حة	حمام سبا
sports field (n)	ملعب رياضي	captain (n)	ف/كابتن	قائد الفرية
tennis court (n)	ملعب تنس	focus (ed)	1915	يركز
take regular exercises	يتدرب بانتظام	organize (d)	4/7	ينظم
first aid (n)	الإسعافات الأولية	train (ed)		يتدرب
recipe (n)	وصفة طهي	100	1701	
		ī.	3.5	

Vocabulary			المفردات الاضافية
park (n)	حديقة	actually (adv)	للدف/لقع
lake (n)	بحيرة	chef (n)	طاه
healthy (adj)	صحي	skill (n)	مهارة
activity (n)	نشاط	lovely (adj)	جميل
different (adj)	مختلف	garden (n)	حديقة
thoughts (n)	أفكار	cinema (n)	دار عرض/سینما
important (adj)	هام	cafe (n)	مقهى
class (n)	درس/حصة	game (n)	اعبة/مباراة
cook (n)	طباخ	describe (d)	يصف
idea (n)	فكرة	use (d)	يستخدم
table tennis (n)	تنس الطاولة	need (ed)	يحتاج
umbrella (n)	مظلة	enjoy (ed)	يستمتغب
		2~	



to do gotivitico with your parente arandparente
to do activities with your parents, grandparents, brothers and sisters
to describe your thoughts and activities in writing
to take courses to find out how to do different activities
to do things for other people where you live
to do sports or other healthy activities
to visit and enjoy parks, lakes or other green spaces

Expressions & Prepositions

spend time	يقضي وقت	do a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع
learn new skills	يتعلم مهارات جديدة	take courses	يأخذ دورات
do sports	يؤدي رياضة	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة
do activities	يقوم بعمل أنشطة	find out	يكتشف
get ready	عديسة	(be) able to	قادر على
the sports day	اليوم الرياضي	around us	حولنا
That's great	هِذَا عظيم	think about	يفكر في
looks like	يبدو و كانه	both of	كلا من

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
healthy	صحي	well	unhealthy غير صحى
different	مختلف	various	مشابه similar
important	هام	significant	unimportant مهم
interesting	شيق	exciting	ممل boring
new	جديد	modern	قديم old
regular	منتظم	steady	irregular غير منتظم
lovely	جميل	beautiful	terrible / ugly فظيع
able to	قادر على	capable of	unable to د غیر قادر علی

بادثات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
un-	تعطي العكس	unusual
-y	تحول الاسم او الفعل الى صفة	healthy
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	actually

Conjugations of	of Irregular Verbs		تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spend	يقضي وقت	spent	spent
take	ياخذ	took	taken
think	عقتدي	thought	thought
learn	ملحتي	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
get	يحصل على	got	got
leave	يغادر	left	left
know	يعرف	knew	known

Language Notes

1) time

- time (اسم لا يعد)
- Ex. What time are you going out tonight?
- time (عدر مرات times مرة (اسم
- Ex. How many times do you go to the park? Once a week.

` ملاحظات لغوية `

(2) like +(to + inf.) / like = (V + ing)

يمكن أن يأتي بعد (like) إما (to + inf.) أو (V + ing) بدون تغير في المعنى

- Ex. I don't have much free time, so I like to use it well.
- Ex. I like playing with my friends.

3) journal = diary / dairy

- journal = diary مذکرات
- Ex. Before I go to bed, I write a journal (diary).
- dairy منتجاث الألبان

munomus

Ex. You should eat less dairy.

4) spend / time – money

- v.ing + يقضي وقت v.ing
- Ex. I spend my free time reading books.
- spend money ينفق أموال + on ... النفق أموال
- Ex. She spends a lot of money on of eldo clothes.

Check on Language Notes 🗸



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. My mother likes _____ breakfast in the morning.
 - a. to have b. having c. to having
- 2. I usually write a _____ before I go to bed every night.
- a. dairu b. book c. menu
- 3. How _____ time did you spend reading this story? a. many b. long c. much
- 4. Alaa _____ a lot of time answering the question.
 - - a. paid b. sent c. spent
 - SB Page (29)



d. a & b are correct

d. journal

d. old

d. gave

New Message

To From

: Asser

Mahmoud

Subject

: RE: Hello new friend

Hi Asser,

Thanks for your email! You asked me about my free time(1).

This is an important(2) year at school and I don't have much free time, so I like to use it well!

Reading and listening skills

In the mornings before school, I write a "To do" list(3) of things I need to do. It really helps me to organize(4) my day. After school, I do different things. It's important to take regular(5) exercise, so on Tuesdays and Thursdays I play football with my friends. I like playing with them! They help me a lot. I also like to learn new skills(6), so I go to evening classes(7). At the moment, I am learning first aid(8)! I want to be able to(9) help people.

On the weekends, I spend time(10) with my family. We like to go for walks in nature(11). We don't take our phones, so we can enjoy what is around us. There are some really lovely(12) parks and gardens in this city. Sometimes my brother and I help in the community (13). He is a chef(14), and we help to make food for hungry people at his restaurant. I love to learn recipes(15) from him. My mom is a good cook, too. I think my brother learned a lot from her!

Every night, before I go to bed, I write a journal(16). It helps me

to think about what I have done and focus(17) on good things. I think it helps me to sleep better, too!

(

Tell me how you spend your free time. Maybe(18) I can get some good ideas! Bye! Mahmoud

(C) 00

- ا. وقت الفراغ ا. هام
- ٣. قائمة المهام

Cc Bcc

- ع. ينظم
- ه. منتظمة
- ۷. دروس مسائية
- ٨. اسعافات اولية
 - 9. قادر على
 - ا. أقضى الوقت
 - اا. الطبيعة
 - ۱۲. جمیل
 - ۱۳. المجتمع
 - 31. طاه
- ها. وصفات الطبخ ۱٦. مذکرات
 - ۱۷. ارکز
 - ۱۸. ریما

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Summarize the second paragraph.

لخص الفقرة الثانية

2. Give words from the passage that means: beautiful - diary.

استخرج كلمات من النص تعنى... ...

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)

- لكي استخدم وقت فراغي بشكل جيد اقوم بكتابة قائمة المهام . To use my free time well I usually write a to do list
- من المهم ان نتمرن بشكل منتظم لكي نحافظ على اللياقة البدنية . 2. It is important to do regular exercise to keep fit
- 3. I take evening classes to learn new skills.

ادر س في صفوف مسائية لتعلم مهارات جديدة

4. I love to learn recipes from my mother.

احب تعلم وصفات الطبخ الجديدة من والدتي

2. lovely - journal

rearning first aid to help people.

1. I write a to do list to organize my day. I do regular exercises and have evening classes. Now, I'm

Answers:

ا. يستعد ۲. حقا

ع. مظلة

ه. أغادر

٦. تمطر

۷. مشروع

٣. ملعب التنسر



SB Page (30)

Pre-listening question:

- Where would you and your best friend like to go?

Listen to the dialog. Which of the places in exercise 1 are they

going?

Maleeka :Hi, Mazen.

Mazen: Hi, Maleeka. What are you doing?

Maleeka: I'm getting ready(1) to go out. Do you still want to

go to the park?

Mazen : Actually, (2) let's go to the tennis court"(3).

Maleeka : OK, good idea.

(Maleeka searching noisily for something)

Mazen: What are you doing now?

Maleeka: I'm looking for something. I must find my umbrella(4) before I leave(5)

the house.

Mazen :Why? It isn't raining (6) at the moment.

Maleeka : It isn't for the rain. It's for the sun!

Mazen : Oh, OK. Well, see you soon. Bye!

(phone ringtone)

Samer :Hi, Mazen.

Mazen : Hi, Samer. Do you want to come to the tennis court with me and

Maleeka?

Samer : Thanks, but I can't. I'm doing my math project (7). Have fun!

Mazen : Thanks! Bye! [pause]

Unit (3 My Time

Mazen&Maleeka: Hi, Adam!

: Hi, Mazen. Hi, Maleeka. What are you Adam

doing?

Maleeka

: We're going to the tennis court. What are

٨. التدريب

you doing?

: I've just finished training (8) with my football team. Now, I'm Adam

meeting a friend at the cinema.

Adam : I'm meeting Samer.

Mazen&Maleeka: What? He said he had to do his math project!

: Yes, but he finished early, and now he can come! Adam



SB Page (31)

Complete the text with the present continuous form of the verb in brackets;

Good afternoon! As you know, our students aren't having lessons this afternoon because it's the school sports day! At the moment, two students are running and their parents are watching them. That's great! Some students are playing tennis on the tennis court behind me. It looks like an interesting game. The football teams are getting ready for their match. Wait a minute! One student is walking onto the football field. He's the captain of one of the teams! Now both of the teams are there. It's time for the game to start!

Exercises on Vocabulary



Complete the following dialogue:

Nada was going to the club and she meets Rahma

Nada: Hello, Rahma! Where are you going? Rahma: Hi, Nada. I am going to the cinema.

Nada

Rahma: @ What about you?

Nada : 3

Rahma: Why?

Nada: To play a football match.

Rahma: @ -----

Nada: Yes, I am in the school football team.

Rahma: I wish you good luck.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1.	Writing a list helps yo	u to your c	lay.	
	a. take	b. organize	c. kill	d. spend
2.	I always write a/ an	before I go to	o bed to rememb	er what I have done.
	a. journal	b. letter	c. menu	d. email
3.	Raneem likes cooking	g and loves to learn r	new fro	m her mother.
	a. skills	b. recipes	c. skies	d. ways
4.	Osama has a lot of w	ork to do. He doesn't	have much	time.
	a. high	b. free	c. part	d. full
5.	I had a cou	rse to help in case of	f emergency.	
	a. day care	b. first aid	c. break time	d. free time
		Bit by Bit Exe	rcises	
6.	My brother is healthy.	He usually	_sports on the w	veekends.
	a. makes	b. does	c. needs	d. organizes
7.	I go to evening classe	es because I like to le	earn new	
	a. skills	b. skulls	c. skies	d. tasks
8.	On the weekends, Rih	nam likes to	time with her fo	amily.
	a. help	b. get	c. spend	d. organize
9.	We should	in the community we	live in.	
	a. organize	b. know	c. focus	d. help
0.	My uncle is a	He makes deliciou	ıs dishes.	
	a. teacher	b. doctor	c. chef	d. cooker
1.	Last week we played	two of che	ss with my friend	Ahmed.
	a. games	b. courts	c. fields	d. classes
2.	There is a large swim	mingin the	e club near our h	ouse.
	a. pool	b. field	c. court	d. mall
3.	There are some lovely	yin our citų	y where you can g	go for walks in nature.
	a. pools	b. parks	c. malls	d. courts

14. I was the	of the football te	am at school.		
a. chef	b. captain	c. cook	d. teacher	
15. Last week, we v	vent to the shopping	to buy s	ome clothes.	
a. pool	b. field	c. mall	d. court	
16. You should do r	egular exercise. The	antonym of regula	aris	
a. normal	b. ordinary	c. quiet	d. irregular	
17. The prefix	changes the ac	djective usual to th	ne opposite.	
a. dis-	b. im-	c. ir-	d. un-	
	Expressions	& prepositions		
18. To be fit, it is imp	oortant tor	egular exercises.		
a. take	b. play	c. go	d. walk	
19. We need to	on the good thi	ng we do and do i	t again	
a. think	b. know	c. focus	d. learn	
20. On weekends, m	y friends and I like to	go wal	ks along the Nile.	
a. on	b. from	c. to	d. for	
21. You must be able	espeak Fr	ench to take the jo	ob.	
a. on	b. from	c. to	d. for	
22. Do you	any sport at school?	?		
a. do	b. make	c. have	d. go	
Rearrange the f	following words to r	nake meaningful	sentences:	
1. skills - learn - <u>Ho</u>	w - new - you - ao?	6		
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	or - Religion of		
	meeting - <u>I'm</u> - frien			
$\label{eq:continuous} m_{i,j} = \sum_{i=1}^{j} m_{i,j} = $	- in - for - go - to - w			2000 20
o, nataro tino s	101 - g0 - t0 - w	uins.		



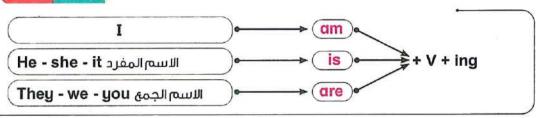
Language

قواعد لغوية

The present continuous tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

التكوين Form



الاستخدام Usage

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام) .

Ex. They are watching TV now. Ex. I am playing football now.

- يستخدم ليعبر عن أحداث بدأت من فترة ومستمرة ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام:

Ex. I'm learning French these days.

- يستخدم أيضًا ليعبر عن أحداث مؤقتة:

Ex. My dad is staying at home today. He usually goes to work at that time.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

- (الآن) now •
- at the present time (في الوقت الحاضر)
- استمع) listen ا
- Look! (انظر)
- at the moment (في هذة اللحظة)

النفي Negative

• عند نفى زمن المضارع المستمر نضع not • عند نفى زمن المضارع المستمر نضع not •

Ex. He is playing football now.

Ex. He is not playing football now. النفي

Ex. They are watching TV now.

Ex. They are not watching TV now. النفي

السؤال Question

- - وعند عمل سؤال في زمن المضارع المستمر نقدم am - is - are على الفاعل.

- وعند عمل سؤال بأداة استفهام نستخدم القاعدة الآتية:

? + تكملة الجملة + الفعل + am - is - are (أداة الاستفهام)

Ex. He is playing football.

What is he doing? Is he playing football?

 What is she doing? Ex. She is watching TV. Is she watching TV? Ex. Ali is eating in the kitchen. • Is Ali eating in the kitchen?

Where is Ali eating?

0.					11 - 34		
:	Notes	-to	ıke ta	ة (ing). king - h	بر منطوق تحذف عند إضاف ave having	ىل بحرف (e) غب come	غا انتهى الف coming
					وانتهى بحرف ســاكن يسبذ		
						د إضافة (ing).	الساكن عنا
						- get	
3	س والملكية	بعال الحواب	ىستمر وهي اف	أو اي زمن م	في زمن المضارع المستمر		
						الإدراك مثل:	و التفكير و
	hear	see	have	own	understand	know	think
	يسمع	یری	يمتلك	يمتلك	توهم	يعرف	عقتدي
			Former	~f~~		Ti .	
10			T-27/GT	GISE	on Language)	
	Choose	the cor	rect answ	er from	a, b, c or d:		
				SB E	kercises		
1	. We are		to the tenn	is court r	iow.		
	a. go		b. go	es	c. went	d. going	
2	. I	doing r	ny homew	ork at the	moment.		
	a. was		b. am		c. were	d. is	
3	. Are you _		to the cafe	?			
	a. walking	9	b. wa	lk	c. walked	d. walks	
4	. She	eati	ng at the n	noment. S	She's sleeping.		
	a. is		b. wa		c. isn't	d. wasn't	
5.	At the mo	ment, tv	vo students	S	and their parents a	re watchina	them.
	a. is runni		b. ran		c. run	d. are rur	
				Bit by Bit	Exercises		

a. is	b. was	c. isn't	d. wasn't
5. At the moment, two	students	and their parents a	e watching them.
a. is running	b. ran	c. run	d. are running
	Bit by Bit E	excises	
6. I'm my ho	mework now.	tig it	
a. do	b. did	c. done	d. doing
7. Shetrying	g to open the can.	(sing)	
a. am	b. is	c. are	d. has
8. Theyfoot	ball at the moment.		n on the same gre
a. am playing	b. is playing	c. are playing	d. was playing
9. Samy and his siste	era cake in	the kitchen now.	
a. are making	b. is making	c. make	d. was making

10.	Please be quiet , I	at the momer	nt.	
	a. think	b. am thinking	c. thinking	d. have thought
11.	I very hard t	this year.		466.200
	a. work	b. am working	c. working	d. was working
12.	My friend Ahmed live	es in Alexandria but h	ne with u	s at the moment.
	a. stays	b. is staying	c. stay	d. staying
13.	I she does r	VISIT OF THE PARTY		
	a. think			ng d. thinks
14.	Listen to that woman			d
15	a. does she say			
15.	At the moment, some a. playing			
16	Our students aren't			10 to
10.	a. take			The state of the s
17.	Please be quiet. The		o b the part of the state of th	
	a. are slept	b. sleeping	c. are sleeping	d. is sleeping
18.	I'm not mucl	n coffee these days.		
		b. drinking		d. drank
	They a new			das building
	a. are built			u. was building
	the boys doi		c. Have	d. Do
	Complete the senten			
		14.7		a(o) in brackets.
	Look! She(c		*	
	He (walk) to			
	We (gets) up			
	Are the boys	THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SE		
5.	Listen, someone	(sing) in the stre	et. ng nego o	
6.	They (playin	g) tennis now.		
7.	Are you (visi	t) Aswan next Friday	?	and a supplication of the
8.	My mom is in the kitch	nen. She (c	ook) lunch.	4.4.4
9.	Raneem (ha	ve) a course in Engli	sh these days.	a straight self
10	Ahmad and Omar ara	n't (wetch)	T\/ now	and the second

Ceneral Exercises (a) on Lessons 1& 2

Complet	e the following dialogue:		
Huda is talk	ing to a tourist.		
Huda : W	elcome to Egypt. 🕧		
Tourist : I'n	n from France.		
Huda : Is	it your first visit to Egypt?		
Tourist : @			
	nere are you staying?		
Tourist: 8	•••••		••••
	stay for fifteen days.		
Huda : Wi	nat places will you visit?		
Tourist : 6			
Read and	d complete:		
	dark - nature - hous	se - weekends - ligh	t
Omar and	his friend Ahmed like goin	g for walks in 🕧	to enjoy the frest
air. They usu	ıally go on 🙋 O	nce they had a terrib	ole accident. They wen
near an old	8 where nobody	lived. It was 🐠 📖	inside. When the
got nearer, s	ome dogs barked at them.	They were afraid and	d decided not to go nea
empty house			(S O)/
A			
Choose t	he correct answer from a	, b, c or d:	
1. I usually v	vrite a " to do" of t	he things I need to d	lo.
a. menu	b. letter	c. list	d. email
2. Writing a	helps me to think	about the things I ho	ve done.
a. magazin	e <mark>b.</mark> journal	c. film	d. dairy
3. My uncle r	nakes food for hungry peo	ple in his	
a mall	b court	a rootaurant	d field

4.	Last night, we	a lot of time talking	g about our last	trip to the zoo.
	a. organized	b. spent	c. sent	d. found
5.	We should	regular exercises to I	keep fit.	
	a. take	b. make	c. hold	d. go
6.	After school, I somet	imes go to the	to watch a mo	ovie.
	a. pool	b. mall	c. cinema	d. market
7.	Tommy wal	king on the grass?		
	a. Are	b. Does	c. Is	d. Am
8.	Amany isw	ith her friends in the p	oark.	
	a. walks	b. walk	c. walked	d. walking
9.	What, Rand	? — I'm getting ready	to go out.	
	a. do you do	b. were you doing	c. are you doing	d. have you done
10.	Anashis hor	nework now. He is w	atching TV.	
	a. is doing	b. was doing	c. isn't doing	d. weren't doing
1.	Adam and Samer	tennis on the t	ennis court at the	e moment.
	a. is playing	b. are playing	c. am playing	d. were playing
2.	The football teams	ready for thei	r match.	SB
	a. is getting	b. are getting	c. am getting	d. was getting
	Complete the senter	nces with the correct	t form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
		9		4-
	My mother is	THE TRUST HONOR SEC. A. 1. S.	this week.	
2.	I (eat) my di	nner right now.		
3.	Why isn't Ali	(play) football tomo	rrow?	
4.	They are (or	en) a new shopping	mall downtown.	Maria de la Maria de
5.	My sister(le	arn) Spanish.	"ob cal	
		c. (ist	b. latter	
	Reorder the following	ng words to make m	neaningful sente	ences:
1.	play - Thursdays - <u>I</u> - 1			
 -				
2.	are - now - doing - Wi	<u>rat</u> - you?		ligen _D



3. going - the - We're - court - to - tennis.



Write an email of about (80-90) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

to your cousin Nader who is studying in London telling him about your interests and asking him if he has the same interests.

Your name is Ali and your email address is pupil@prepschool.com

His email address is nader@gmail.com

0	New Message		
To			Cc Bcc
From		•	
Subject)	-8	
Send		•	S. JAPata N. C.

Answer these questions to help you write the email.

- 1- What are you interested in?
- 2- When do you practise it?

3- Where do you practise it?

- 4- With whom do you practise it?
- اجابة الاستُلة السابقة يساعدك في كتابة الموضوع
- I'm interested in.....
- I usually practise it
- I also enjoy reading and taking walks......
- I even write in my journal





Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

bazaar (n)	سوق/(بازار)	bracelet (n)	سورة
stall (n)	کشك/محل صغیر	ingredients (n)	مقادیر/مکونات
homemade (adj)	صناعة منزلية	extra (adj)	إضافي
breaktime (n)	وقت الاستراحة/فسحة	school principal (n)	مدیر مدرسة مدیر مدرسة
beads (n)	خرز	advice (n)	نصيحة
string (n)	خيط	present (ed)	يقدم
jewelery (n)	مجوهرات		

Vocabulary 📴

المفردات الاضافية

lemonade (n)	عصير ليمون	clear (adj)	واضح
cool (adj)	بارد/رائع	surprised (adj)	مندهش
weather (n)	طقس	expert (n)	خبیر
maybe (adv)	ريما	respect (ed)	يحترم
cupcakes (n)	کب کیك/کعك محلی	replace (d)	يستبدل
stressed (adj)	متوتر/مضغوط نفسيا	decorate (d)	يزين/يزخرف
toys (n)	لعب أطفال	relax (ed)	يسترخي
polite (adj)	مهذب	discuss (ed)	يناقش
		2~	

Expressions & Prepositions

That's a good idea	هذه فكرة جيدة	I'm not sure about that	لست متاكد بخصوص
I agree	أوافق	make a plan	يعمل خطة
right now	الآن/خالاممال	do well	يؤدي جيدا
I don't think so	لا أعتقد هذا	join a club	ينضم لنادي
	140.30		إنه شيء ممتع
That's true	هذاصحيح	after-school classes	حصص بعد المدرسة
There you go	ها هو الناتج		قلق بشان
That's cool	هذارائع	ask for	يطلب
take a long time to		at breaktime	في الاستراحة
	تستغرق وقت طويل لكي	how about	ماذا عن
almost over	یکاد ینتهی	give advice	يسدى النصح



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
agree	يوافق	accept	ل يوافق disagree
calm	هادئ	quiet	noisy صاخب
relaxed	مرتاح	calm	worried قلق
best	الأفضل	finest	worst loud
kind	طیب/عطوف	cruel	unkind غير عطوف
polite	مهذب	decent	impolite غير مهذب

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
dis-	سكحاا يكحت	disagree
ion -ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	discussion
im-	سكحاا يطعت	impolite

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs			تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة	
Present	*0.32	Past simple	Past Participle	
buy	يشتري	bought	bought	
sell	يبيئ	sold emil d	sold	
give	اليعضي المحردات	nigavesənən zi səci	given	

Language Notes

ulamis

`ملاحظات لغوية ﴿

1) cool

بارد cool

Ex. I'd love a glass of cool lemonade.

رائع / جميل cool •

THENAY

b hard

Ex. Look, I have made a bracelet from beads and string. — That's cool!

2) hard / hardly

- hard عصا
- Ex. My father works hard.
- معب hard معب
- Ex. This is a hard question.

- hard عمد اعدا
- Ex. My father is a hard worker.
 - hardly تقریبا لا/ بالکاد
- Ex. He hardly knows any French.

3 advice / advise

- advice (n) نصيحة
- Ex. Who do you ask for advice if you need help?
- advise (v) advised ينصح
- Ex. My parents always advise me to sleep early.

م تستغرق وقت لکی take time to + inf

تستغرق وقت لکی

Ex. It took a long time to get to school.

Check on Language Notes 🗸

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Samy is clever because he always works _____
 - a. lazy

- b. hard
- c. slow
- d. hardly

- 2. My father usually gives me good
 - a. advice
- b. time
- c. advise
- d. court
- 3. Drinking _____ juice is refreshing in this hot weather.
 - a. hot

- b. warm
- c. cool
- d. boiling
- 4. Lazy students _____ do their homework regularly.
 - a. difficult
- b. hard
- c. simply
- d. hardly



Reading and listening skills



SB Page (32)

ا. صناعة منزلية

ه. ا<mark>ستراحة/فسحة</mark> ٦. تقرىباانتهت

۲. کشك/محل ۳. سوق

ع. طقس

۷. مجوهرات

۸. خرز ۹. خبط

ا. اسورة

اا. هذارائع

ال کعک ادر ال مقادیر

۱۳. لعب اطفال

١٢. يستغرق وقت طويل



SB Page (32)

Salma: Hi, Sahar!

Sahar: Hi, Salma. What are you drinking?

Salma: Homemade(1) lemonade. My friend Shorouk and her

brother are selling it from their stall⁽²⁾ at the bazagr⁽³⁾".

Sahar: That's a good idea, isn't it?

Salma: Yes, I agree. The weather(4) is so hot.

Sahar: I'd love a glass of cool lemonade right now!

Salma: Well, why don't you buy some?

Sahar: I don't think so. Our break (5) is almost over (6).

Salma: OK. What's that you're making?

Sahar: It's jewelery (7). Look, I put these beads (8) onto some

string (9) and there you go - a bracelet (10)!

Salma: That's cool (11). You could sell them at the next school bazgar.

Sahar: But they take a long time (12) to make.

Salma: That's true. Why don't we sell some of our old tous (13)?

Sahar: I'm not sure about that. It would be nice to make something. I know, how

about cupcakes (14)? Everyone loves cupcakes!

Salma: Great, let's find the ingredients (15)...



SB Page (34)

"Ask Jana": Share your problems with Jana

Dear Jana,

I'm writing to you about my best friend Fareeda. She's a good friend and a kind⁽¹⁾ person. She works hard⁽²⁾ at school. My friends and I are really worried⁽³⁾ about her. She studies all the time and

ا. عطوف

٦. بجد ٣. قلق

۱. حتق ٤. متوتر

ه. والدين

٦. وقت الفسحة

٧. إضافي

she is very stressed⁽⁴⁾. Her parents⁽⁵⁾ work hard, and they want her to do well at school. She wants to make them happy. She doesn't go out at breaktime⁽⁶⁾ and she always asks our teacher for extra⁽⁷⁾ homework.

and det then a



1	
10	
686	200
1	9
1/0	

Asking for and giving advice

طلب واعطاء النصيحة

عند طلب النصيحة أو إعطاءها المختلفة فهناك بعض العبارات التي نستخدمها للتعبير عن ذلك:

Asking for advice -

Giving advice

Is it a good idea to.....?

هل من الحيد أن؟

Do you think we should...?

هل تعتقد أننا يجب أن ...؟

What do you think we should do?

ماذا تعتقد أننا يجب أن نفعل . . . ؟

I think we could... ... أعتقد أننا يمكننا

You should / shouldn't...

ىنىغى/لاينىغى...

If I were you, I'd...

لو كنت مكانك كنت سوف ...

I advise you to / not to...

أنصحك أن/ألا ...



Agreeing & Disagreeing in a discussion القبول والرفض عند المناقشة

• عندما نتناقش مع الأشخاص الآخرين في الموضوعات المختلفة فهناك بعض العبارات التي نستخدمها للتعبير عن الموافقة أو عدم الموافقة:

Agreeing

Yes, I agree.

OK.

That's true.

Disagreeing

No, I disagree / No, I don't agree.

I don't think so.

I'm not sure about that.

Exercises on Vocabulary



Complete the following dialogue:

Maha is talking to Aliaa about free time.

Maha : How do you usually spend your free time?

Aliga

Aliga

: I like reading short stories.

Maha

Maha

: Where do you get them?

Aliaa

Maha

: Can I borrow some of your books?

Aliga

: @.....

-----?42.Joorlos?

Maha Aliga

: You can take them tomorrow after school.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. We can use beads a	ınd to mak	e a bracelet.	
a. glass	b. lemonade	c. cupcakes	d. string
2. My uncle has a			107
a. market			
3. Taking afr	om work can help ref	fresh your mind.	
a. break	b. breath	c. time	d. money
4. She made a beautif	ul with cold	orful beads.	-
a. glass	b. bracelet	c. cake	d. picture
5. She bought all the	to make a d	elicious cake.	
a. ingredients	b. jewelery	c. cupcakes	d. flowers
6. Sahar is at	t work, she decided t	o take a day off to	o relax.
a. stressed	b. happy	c. relaxed	d. calm
7. She loves to make _			
a. outdoor	b. homemade	c. windy	d. homework
	Bit by Bit Exe		
8. Students go to the s	chool bazaar in the	to buy v	vhat they need
a. class	b. break	c. evening	d. night
Good students usua	lly ask their teachers	and parents for .	
a. advice	b. advise	c. money	d. food
10. Fareeda is a good st	udent. She always w	orks	
a. hardly	b. hard	c. hardest	d. harden
11. The teacher was	when Ameera	asked him for mo	ore homework.
a. surprised	b. afraid	c. kind.	d. relaxed
12. Theshe pr	epared was refreshir	ng on a hot day.	
a. bead	b. lemonade	c. cupcake	d. lesson
13 we can go	for a walk in the par	k later.	
a. Possible	b. Hardly	c. Maybe	d. May
14. Her were t	he best at the baker	J.:	
a. beads	b. lemonade		
15. Thebreeze	e in the evening was	refreshing after t	he hot sun.
a. warm	b. hot	c. cool	d. boiling

			Less
16. We don't go out i	n bad		
a. whether	b. winter		
17. We need a piece	of to tie th	is tree to the wall.	
a. glass	b. lemonade	c. cupcakes	d. string
18. I feel more relaxe	d on the beach. The	antonym of relaxed	d is
a. calm	b. worried	c. happy	d. quiet
19. The prefix	changes the verb	agree to the oppos	site.
a. dis-	b. im-	c. ir-	d. un-
	Expressions &	prepositions	
20. Let's a	plan to visit the new r	museum this week	end.
a. act	b. make	c. do	d. help
21. She was worried	her exam b	out studied hard.	
a. about	b. for	c. over	d. on
22. Don't worry! You	will well in	the competition.	



a. make

Language

b. do

قواعد لغوية

d. lose

Subject and object pronouns

- نستخدم ضمائر الفاعل عندما نتحدث عن من قام بالفعل.
- نستخدم ضمائر المفعول عندما نتحدث عن من يتلقى الفعل (من وقع عليه الفعل).

c. win

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Example
I	me	I love my mom and she loves me.
He	him ^(x) 2 A zort pine pried	He is smiling at me and I'm smiling at him.
She	hero	She gave her a present.
It	oak laterti	It is a cat. I played with it.
We	us	We helped him and he helped us.
They	them	They asked us for money and we gave them.
You	you	You respect us and we respect you,

now h

Exercises on Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. We go to the	oark and walk in nature	with	
a. he	b. she	c. them	d. we
2can	help you.		
a. Us	b. Me	c. Her	d. She
3. We do regula	r exercise. It helps	relax.	
a. I	b. us	c. they	d. he
4. I asked	for advice.		
a. he	b. we	c. them	d. they
5is le	arning new skills in afte	r-school classes.	
a. Me	b. He	c. Him	d. Her
	Bit by Bit	Exercises	
6. They asked	to help in the co	mmunity and she o	ıgreed.
a. she	b. hers	c. herself	d. her
7. Ahmed and I	are brothers	always help each o	ther.
a. We	b. Our	c. Us	d. Ours
8. You can go w	ith to the club	on Thursday.	
a. me	b. I	c. my	d. mine
9. My baby broth	ner is crying . Can you h	near?	
a. he	b. his	c. him	d. her
10. Omar and Kar	eem are best friends.	are both in	grade 5.
a. He	b. They	c. Them	d. Their
11. I always ask ₋	for advice whe	n I have a problem	•
a. they	b. he	c. them	d. she
12. Rasha likes F	areeda and she is worr	ied about	
a. she	b. hers	c. herself	d. her
13. We should ha	ve milk. It is good for		
a. our	b. she	c. us	d. we

Are you going to in	vite to you	ur party?	
a. them	b. they	c. their	d. we
15. My friend and I have	e money.	can go shopping.	
a. They	b. We	c. Us	d. Them
16. My sister isn't here	·is at wor	k.	
a. Her	b. She	c. You	d. It
17. Where is Nader? I	want to talk to		
a. he	b. his	c. him	d. her
18. Rawan is a student.	is 14 yea	ırs old.	
a. She	b. Him	c. Her	d. I
19. She is not coming w	vith on the	trip.	
a. they	b. us	c. we	d. he
20. They gave Ali a pres	ent but di	dn't like it.	
a. him	b. her	c. he	d. his
Complete the sente	nces with the corr	ect form of the we	ord(s) in brackets:
	SB Exer		orațo) în bruckets.
1. I have a journal and			
2(Them) take			oo timoo a
3. We are helping	(he) with his h	omework topiaht	ee umes a week.
4. Samir needs to plan			a " To do" list
5. Do you want to come	for a walk with	(T)2	d 10 do tist.
	Bit by Bit Ex		
0.01		Choloco	
6. She can help			
7. We do regular exercis			
8. He is learning new sk			(we).
9. Why didn't you tell			
10. Who is she? Do you k	now (she)?	
11. I met (he) yes	sterday.		
12. My friend sent me a po	ostcard. (it	s) was a nice pres	ent

General Exercises (1) on Lessons 3&4

The state of the s				
Complete the f	ollowing dialogue:			
Mona and Nada a	re talking about food	t		
Mona: What is yo	ur favorite food?			
Nada : 🗿				
Mona: Koshari! Fo	antastic. 🙆		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	?
Nada: Tomatoes	and pasta.			
Mona : 8				?
Nada: Yes, it is v				
Manage Mark also	do nou like?			
Nada : 🙆	do god tike:		What abo	ut you?
Mona : I like kofta	very much. Let's go to	a restaurant and	have kofta.	
Choose the co	rrect answer from a,	b, c or d:		
1. I'd like to meet	other people who	my hobby.		
a. draw	b. relax	c. share	d. mix	
2. He decided to	a club at scho	ool to meet new frie		
a. record		c. go	d. play	
	to play the guitar. The			
	b. cool			
If you have a pr	roblem at school , you			
a. prince	19	c. principle		
Salma sells hor	memade lemonade or	her stall in the		

d. Him b. She c. He clean the flat? 7. Why don't you help C. US a. we 8. We will be late if _____ doesn't hurry up. c. us d. her b. she a. him 9. My mother prepared some delicious cakes for ____ a. I c. mine d. me b. my

b. bazaar

6. _____ is a brave and strong man.

10. Riham gave Omar the shopping list but _____ forgot to give him the money.

c. pool

d. court

a. her b. she c. his d. him

a. field

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in bracket	s:
1. I gave the book to(she).	TO BE THE
2. I can't see Omar. I think (him) is playing football.	
3. They invited (he) to join their team.	
4. We are going to the park. Do you want to come with (we).	
5. They waved at (we) from across the street.	
6(Them) are studying for the test.	
7. I asked (they) for help with my homework.	
8. Mum is cooking dinner. Let's help (she).	
9. She thanked(I) for the delicious meal.	
10. Maha usually goes to the library (Her) loves reading.	
Pead and complete:	
wedding - success - marks - invited - party	
Adel is giving a 10 at home. He has 20 some of his friends.	TL .
arty will be at five o'clock in the afternoon. Hany is giving this party because o	fhic
	כווו ונ
Write an email of about (80-90) words:	
to your uncle Fareed who is working in New York telling him about a prol you have at school and asking for his advice. Your name is Yossif and your e address is : yossif@prepschool.com	olem email
Your uncle's email address is : fareed@gmail.com	
ب عنه في آخر الوحدة)	(مجار
	82
	-
– الاسئلة القادمة تساعدك في كتابة الموضوع	-
Answer these questions to help you write the email.	
1- What's the problem you are facing?	
2- What does this problem cause? 3- Ask your uncle for advice.	
- اجابة الاسئلة السابقة يساعدك في كتابة الموضوع	
- I'm having a bit of trouble in	
- It's making it hard to	
- Do you have any advice on	





المفردات الرئيسية

أً استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

صندوق مخبا	treasure hunt (n)	البحث عن الكنز
الباحث عن مخبأ	hometown (n)	مسقط الراس/البلد الاصلى
العثور على المخبأ	challenge (n)	تحدي
مفتاح لحل لغز	tips (n)	نصائح
الإحداثيات	included (adj)	مشمول/متضمن/مندمج
مهووس/غريب الأطوار	classmate (n)	زميل في الفصل
		يفتقد
	الباحث عن مخبأ العثور على المخبأ مفتاح لحل لغز الإحداثيات مهووس/غريب الأطوار	treasure hunt (n) الباحث عن مخبا hometown (n) الباحث عن مخبا hometown (n) challenge (n) tips (n) included (adj) classmate (n) miss (ed)

Vocabulary			المفردات الاضافية
relaxing (adj)		hobby (n)	هواية
app (n)	تطبيق	outdoor (adj)	خارجي
post (n)	منشور	theme (n)	موضوع
lunchtime (n)	وقت الغداء	through (prep)	عبر/من خلال
together (adv)	احما	sort / type (n)	نوع
shell (n)	صدفة	practice (d)	يتمرن
own (adj)	ملك/خاص	suggest (ed)	يقترح
math (n)	رياضيات	add (ed)	يضيف
extra (adj)	اضافي	mind (ed)	يمانع
hidden (adj)	مخبیً/مخفی	summarize (d)	يلخص
normal (adj)	عادی/طبیعی	solve (d)	يحل
art club (n)	نادی الرسم	notice (d)	يلاحظ
forum post (n)	منشور في منتدى		ينتقل إلى/يعزل

Expressions & Prepositions

worried that	قلق أن	decide on	يحدد/يختار
that sounds fun	يبدو ممتعا	all over	في جميع إنحاء
feel included	يشعر بالالفة/يشعر أنه مندمج	and the second s	أزواج من
count me in	اعتبرني مشاركا		يحسب/يحل
share ideas	يتشارك الأفكار		يزور
so that	لکی	Message me!	راسلني/ابعث لي
have fun		set up	ينشئ

Definitions |

geocache	صندوق مخبا	a hidden box with small, interesting things in for people to find
clues	مفاتيح حل/أدلة	information that helps you solve a problem or find something
coordinates	إحداثيات	Pairs of numbers used to find the location of something
geeky	مهووس/غريب الأطوار	not cool, very interested in a particular thing
logbook		a written record of events
treasure hunt	THE REAL PROPERTY AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY AND ADDRESS.	a game which you play to find something that has been hidden

ı		Y	=	1
	0	3	$\overline{}$	ı
				Į

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
normal	عادي	ordinary	abnormal / unusual علتده ببذ
interesting	شيق	exciting	boring ممل
relaxing	مريح	comfortable	tiring بدتم

Prefixes & Suffixes الكلمات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
geo-	تعطي معنى متعلق بالأرض	geocaching
5 -al se a ud	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	normal
-ing	تحول الاسم او الفعل الى صفة	interesting

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		bs تالأفعال الغير منتظمة	
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
think	عقتد	thought	thought
tell	المجندة ١٥٥	told	told
find	يجد	found	found
lead	يقود	led	led led led
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
set	ينشئ	set	set

Language Notes

` ملاحظات لغوية

decide to / decide on

- decide to + inf. يقرر أن
- Ex. We decided to visit the zoo next Friday.
- يحدد /يختار decide on + noun
- Ex. They decided on a day for the wedding.

شاطئ/مكان المنازل و الطرق shore •

Ex. Mu uncle has a house on the

shore in Alexandria.

beach / shore / coast

- شاطئ/بلاج المنطقة الرملية beach •
- Ex. The children like to play on the beach in Alexandria.
- الساحل/للوصف الجغرافي coast •
- Ex. Alexandria lies on the north coast of Egypt.

3) miss / lose

- یفقد (شیء معنوی)/یفتقد miss •
- Ex. Get up early not to miss the train.
- Ex. My father works abroad. I miss him so much.
- یفقد (شیء مادی)/یخسر lose •
- Ex. Ali lost his pen at school.
- Ex. They train hard so as not to lose the match.

(4) quite / quiet

- تماما/إلى حد ما quite •
- Ex. I think I can draw cats and rabbits quite well!
- quiet +53la
- Ex. Be quiet. The baby is sleeping.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. It's a nice car. The engine's really _
 - a. quiet
- b. quite
- c. quietly
- d. noisy

- 2. He plays the piano well.
 - a. quiet
- b. quite
- c. quietly
- d. noisy
- 3. Omar _____ the bus and had to wait for the next one.
 - a. lost

a. for

- b. drove
- c. missed
- d. took

- 4. I like to sit on the ____ on hot days.
 - a. beach
- b. shore
- c. land
- d. coast
- We must decide _____ one goal to achieve.
 - b. to
- c. on
- d. at



Reading



SB Page (36)

An Unusual Hobby



When Nermine's family move to(1) Oxford for her dad's job, she misses(2) her hometown⁽³⁾, Alexandria. She decides to use her favorite hobby, geocaching⁽⁴⁾, to explore(5) the citu.

Geocaching is a special sort(6) of outdoor treasure hunt(7). Just like a normal(8) treasure hunt, you solve clues(9) to help you find something interesting - the treasure. But in geocaching, the clues come from an app (10) on your phone. When you solve the clues, you get coordinates(11), which are pairs of(12) numbers. These help you find the treasure - the geocache(13), a box

with small, interesting things in it. In Alexandria, Nermine loved geocaching(14) with her friends. She's worried that her new classmates (15) might think

geocaching is geeky⁽¹⁶⁾, so she doesn't tell them about it. Then, one lunchtime, Nermine is looking at a new challenge(17) on her phone when two girls from her class, Sarah and Ella, come over. "What's that game?" asks Sarah.

Nermine explains. "There are millions of geocaches all over(18) the world. When you find one, you don't take the treasure. You write your name in a logbook (19) to tell other geocachers(20) that you found it, then you put it back. If you want, you can put something new into the geocache for other people to find."

"That sounds fun(21)!" says Ella. "Can we play, too?

"Sure! But this is a really difficult one."

"That's okay. Three heads are better than one, so maybe we will find the treasure more quickly together!" Their classmates notice(22) that Nermine, Sarah, and Ella are spending all their lunchtimes together. They ask questions and soon there are ten of them geocaching.

When they find the geocache, they discuss (23) what to add to it. They decide on (24) a school chair and a shell (25) from the beach in Alexandria.

One day, Nermine, Sarah, and Ella decide to make their own geocache. They tell their math teacher. She thinks their idea is good and says that the geocache could be a challenge for the rest⁽²⁶⁾ of the class.

The clues lead(27) the class all over the school. It's hard work and they have to work together. Nermine feels included (28) and happy. Finally, they work out the coordinates and find the geocache. They all have such a good time that they don't even mind(29) that the treasure is extra(30) math homework!

بعزل/پنتقل الی

تفتقد

مسقط الرأس

البحث عن المخبأ

ە. يستكشف

٦. نوع

٧. البحث عن الكنز

۸. عادی

9. مفاتيح الحل

ا. تطسق

اا. الاح داثيات

١٢. أزواج من

۱۳. صندوق مخبأ

١٤. لعبة العثور على المخبأ

ol. jalla

١٦. غريبة

۱۷. تحدی

١٨. في جميع انحاء

١٩. سجل الملاحظات

.٢. الباحثين عن الكنز

۱٦. پېدوممتعا

٦٦. يلاحظون

۲۳. ىناقشون

۲٤. بحددون

٥٦. صدفة

۲٦. باقی

۲۷. تقود

۲۸. تشعر بالألفة

۲۹. یمانع

۳. اضافی

Answer the following questions:

- 1- What is the main idea of the second paragraph?
- 2- In geocaching, you solve to find something interesting.
 - b. treasures

c. coordinates

d. boxes

- 3- The math teacher thinks the idea is
 - a. bad

b. dangerous

c. good

d. safe

3- c. good

2- a. clues

that involves using a mobile app to find hidden geocaches based on coordinates. 1- The main idea of the passage is to introduce geocaching as a type of outdoor treasure hunt

Answers:



SB Page (38)



Nabila's forum post

Hi everyone! I love coloring and painting, and I really enjoy going to art club(1) after school. I also practice(2) most days at home. It's so relaxing(3). My favorite thing to draw is animals. I think I can draw cats, dogs, and rabbits quite well! Here's a drawing(4) I did of my cat last week. Do you like art, too? I would like to meet other people who share(5) my hobby(6) so that we can set up(7) a group نادى الرسم

۲. يمارس

٣. مريح

ع. رسمة/لوحة

ه. بشارك

٦. هواية

۷. ينشئ

٨. مغا

٩. نصائح

ا. يحسن

اا. راسلني

to draw and paint together⁽⁹⁾. We could share ideas, give each other tips(9) to improve(10) our work, and have fun! Message me(11).





comments



Replies to Nabila's post

Cool drawing! I love drawing animals, too. Let's share some pictures!



Hetty 123 Great idea! Count me in.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Complete the fo	ollowing dialogue:			
Lamia : Hi, Karn Karma : 10	a are talking about na! Do you have any	hobbies?		?
	·			?
	me which you play t			
	ange hobby, isn't it '			
Karma : @			What about	t you?
Lamia : 6				
Karma : Reading	is a good hobby.			
Choose the corr	ect answer from a,	b, c or d:		
	Key vocabulary			
1is a typ	e of outdoor treasure	e hunt.		SB
 a. Geography 	b. Geocaching	c. Photograph	ny d. Swimming	
Nermine suggests				SB
a. sit	b. set	c. sell	d. smell	
3. The math teacher	thinks the	ir own geocache is	s a good idea.	SB
	b. recording			
4. Geocaching is a fu		10.75		SB
a. tip		c. clue	d. activity	
5. Ola decided to reta				SB
a. hometown		c. shell		
6. Completing the pu				SB
a. theme		c. message		
	Bit by Bit E	13(2)	d. criditorige	
7 Vou should	Annual Control of the Party of	AND THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF	a call	
7. You should			70,500	
	b. ask			
8. Everyone should k				
a. tip	b. record	c. clue	d. string	
9. Myrefus				
a. father	b. classmate	c. baby	d. uncle	

10. She entered theinto her GPS device to fir				cation of the company.		
	a. tips	b. records	c. shares	d. coordinates		
11.	They found a hidden	in the woo	ds.			
	a. geocache	b. hobby	c. job	d. project		
12.	The finall	ed them to the treasu	ıre.			
	a. tip	b. record	c. clue	d. string		
13.	hobby because it is a					
	a. geeky	b. calm	c. noisy	d. happy		
14.	Sixteen complaints v	vere recorded in the	on the	same day.		
	 a. logbook 	b. dictionary	c. guidebook	d. string		
15.	The best way to	the countryside	e is on foot.			
	a. organize	b. explore	c. record	d. present		
16.	They shared useful_	for success	ful geocaching a	dventures.		
	a. tips	b. hobbies	c. shells	d. strings		
17.	The music	helped Aliaa to caln	n down.			
	a. tiring	b. relaxing	c. dangerous	d. easy		
18.	She downloaded a new to learn new English words.					
	a. app	b. shell	c. clue	d. pot		
19.	Can youth	ne main points of the	lesson?			
	a. miss	b. challenge	c. summarize	d. hunt		
20.	Thetreasu	ıre was finally discov	ered.	46		
	a. relaxed	b. surprised	c. hidden	d. included		
21.	The match was interes	sting. The synonym	of interesting is.			
	 a. exciting 	b. worrying	c. boring	d. tiring		
22.	The suffix	changes the noun int	erest into an adje	ective.		
	aal	bing	cion	dness		
	70	Expressions & pro				
23.	They finally decided	a date for t	he wedding.			
	a. in	b. at		d. for		
24.	My friends are so frie	ndly so I feel	with them.	a security to a security of		
9(1)		b. included		d. sad		
25.	This student is clever	, he can work	any math pro	blem.		
ALP ()	a. in	b. out	c. of	d. out		



1- Writing a forum post

- To write a forum post about your favorite free-time activity, you can use these expressions:

● لكتابة منشور في المنتدى حول نشاط وقت الفراغ المفضل لديك، أجب عن هذه الأسئلة

1- What is your favorite free-time activity? 2- Why do you enjoy it?

3- Why are you writing?

4- Which after-school club activity do you go to?

5- What can you do well?

بمكنك استخدام هذه التعبيرات في الكتابة

I really enjoy ...

• I can . . . quite well.

I would like to

I love

Exercise: Write a forum post about your favorite free-time activity.



Hey everyone.

I'm always looking for ways to relax and get out of stress .I love spending my free time playing video games! It's a great way to relax and have fun. I especially enjoy playing games with my friends online. We can chat while we play and compete against each other. It's really exciting!

What's your favorite free-time activity?

2- Punctuation

• من المهم استخدام علامات الترقيم بشكل صحيح لأنها تسهل عملية القراءة

من أكثر علامات الترقيم استخداما:

1- Period: ähäill

- تستخدم في نهاية الجملة الخبرية :

- My favorite thing to draw is animals.

2- Question mark: كلامة الاستفهام

تستخدم في نهاية السؤال:

- Do you like art?

3- comma: الفاصلة

- تستخدم بين الكلمات في القوائم و بعد No - Yes:

- Aya bought rice, oil, sugar and tea.

- Yes, I like art.

4- Exclamation mark (!): علامة التعجب

- تستخدم للتعبير عن الدهشة

- Hi everyone!

- That's fun

Exercise: Punctuate the following

Nice to meet you Nabila I like your idea I draw and paint a lot too but sometimes I want to practice and share my pictures with other people Also I have an idea for the group We could have a different theme every month Everyone in the group draws or paints a picture on that theme We can then share them at the end of the month What do you think

General Exercises (1) on Lessons 5&6

Complete	the	following	dialogue:
Compress			

K	nalid	and Basel a	re talking about doi:	ng some activitie	es.	
Kł	nalid	: Did you do !	your English homewo	ork?		
В	asel	: 0				
KI	nalid	: 2			?	
В	asel	: I did it last	night.			
KI	nalid	: 63			?	
В	asel	: Sure, I like	drawing.			
KI	nalid	: What do y	ou like to draw?			
В	asel	: 🚳			What about you?	
KI	nalid	: For me, I l	ike reading a lot.			
В	asel	: 6				
2	Cho	ose the corr	ect answer from a, l	o, c or d:		
			ocial media got a lot			
1.				c. clue	d. string	
_	a. tip				u. sung	
2.			train by just a few mi		7 1 I . II	
		ssed		c. had	d. traveled	
3.	0.0		the island af			
	a. sw	vim .	b. travel	c. record	d. explore	
4.	He n	He needed to the hard question to finish the exam.				
	a. as	k	b. solve	c. send	d. count	
5.	The	beach was c	overed in beautiful			
	a. sh	arks	b. fish	c. shells	d. apps	
6.	The	teacher agre	ed to give us	time to finish the	e difficult homework.	
	a. ha	rd	b. extra	c. hidden	d. easy	
7.	The	y walked	the forest hand	in hand.		
	a. fro	m	b. through	c. about	d. over	
8.	The	y the	e latest book they had	d read.		
	a. mi	nded	b. exercised	c. hunted	d. discussed	

21 725			EARLY CONTRACTOR
9. She th	e small details in the	painting.	
a. noticed	b. missed	c. read	d. hunted
10. She has her	style of paintin	g that is really amaz	zing.
a. usual	b. hidden	c. own	d. normal
11. It's to f	eel tired after such a	long trip.	
a. lazy	b. normal	c. beautiful	d. heavy
Read the follow	ving, then answer th	ne questions:	
			ne fresh air. They came
had a torch in his hai room. The boys saw o t there was a big brow They decided to go to they saw two million d	nd and they walked on the big hole near the want the police station who tollars. The dollars want the police station who tollars. The dollars want thieves who were cause	down the steps untiall. There, they four he bag and the jack ere the bag was ope ere stolen from a ba	boys were afraid. Omar I they came to a small and a blue jacket. Under et up the steps quickly. ened. To their surprise, ank a week before. The the boys were rewarded
A- Answer the follow	ing questions:		
1. What did the poli	ce find inside the bag	j ?	
2. Why were the bo	ys rewarded?		
	nderlined word "There		
		(202-1201) 5.4	
- Choose the correc	t answer from a, b,	c or d: ^{avioa} .d	
4people li	ved in the old house.	red in ber	
a. A lot of	b. Few	c. Many	d. No
5. The boys went for	ne to finklow b	primite de la	
a. at night		b. in the afterno	on 🔑
c. in the morning	the second of the second	d. in the evening	
6. The big bag was p			

c. wall

a. jacket

b. hole

d. bank



Read and complete:

DOX GILLLONGO GUAGO INCOME SONO
Nermine explores her new city through her favorite 10, geocaching. She
doesn't want to tell her new @ about it. What if they think it's @?
Nermine's teacher says it can be a @ for the class. They all work together
to find the geocache. It's a lot of fun.
Punctuate the following sentences:
1. yes i like reading football and geocaching
2. ameera got the full mark thats amazing
Write a forum post about your favorite free-time activity:
(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)
– الجمل القادمة تساعد ك في كتابة الموضوع
Answer these questions to help you write the post.
1-How do you like spending your free time?
2- Where do enjoy walking 3- What else do you like to do?
– اجابة الاسئلة السابقة يساعدك في كتابة الموضوع
- I love spending my free time exploring
- I especially enjoy walking
- I also like to

Review on Unit 3

Key Vocabu	ılary		المفردات الرئيسية	
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	walk in nature	 يمشي في الطبيعة	
hobby (n)	قواية	help in community	يساعد في المجتمع	
unusual (adj)	غير معتاد	"to do" list	قائمة المهام	
write a journal	پدون مذکرات	shopping mall (n)	سوق تجاري	
evening classes	دروس مسائية	swimming pool (n)	مام سباحة	
tennis court (n)	ملعب تنس	captain (n)	فائد الفريق/كابتن	
organize (d)	ينظم	focus (ed)	يركز	
bazaar (n)	سوق	help in community	يساعد في المجتمع	
present (v)	تقدما	jewelery (n)	مجوهرا <i>ت</i>	
stall (n)	کشك/محل صغیر	bracelet (n)	أسورة	
homemade (adj)	صناعة منزلية	beads (n)	الخرز	
break (n)	استراحة/فسحة	ingredients (n)	مقادیر/مکونات	
beads (n)	خرز	extra (adj)	إضافي	
string (n)	خيط	school principal (n)	مدير مدرسة	
geocache (n)	صندوق مخبا	advice (n)	نصيحة	
geocacher (n)	الباحث عن مخبأ	treasure hunt (n)	البحث عن الكنز	
geocaching (n)	العثور على المخبأ	صلي المرازم hometown	مسقط الرآس/البلد الا	
clue (n)		miss (ed)n cert yes, go is		
coordinates (n)	الإحداثيات	challenge (n)	1.00	
geeky (n)	مهووس/غريب الأطوار	tips (n)	ـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	
logbook (n)	سجل الملاحظات	included (adj) ندمج	مشمول/متضمن/م	
take regular exercises	يتدرب بانتظام	classmate (n)	زميل في الفصل	





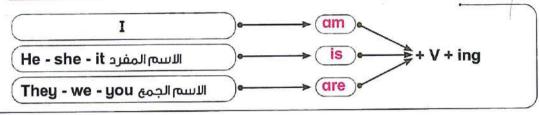
Language

قواعد لغوية

1- The present continuous tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

التكوين Form



- Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام) .

Ex. She is cleaning the house now.

Ex. Look! He is singing.

الكلمات الدالة Keywords

- (الآن) now •
- at the present time (في الوقت الحاضر)
- Listen (استمع)
- Look! (انظر)
- gt the moment (في هذة اللحظة)

Negative النفى

• عند نفى زمن المضارع المستمر نضع not بعد am - is - are.

Ex. They are not watching TV now. النفي

Question السؤال

- وعند عمل سؤال في زمن المضارع المستمر نقدم am - is - dre على الفاعل.

Ex. Is he playing football?

– وعند عمل سؤال بأداة استفهام نستخدم القاعدة الآتية: على على السينة عمل سؤال بأداة استفهام

> + تكملة الجملة + الفعل + الفاعل + am - is - are (أداة الاستفهام) →

Ex. What is he doing?

• Where is Ali eating?

2- Subject and object pronouns

- نستخدم ضمائر الفاعل عندما نتحدث عن من قام بالفعل.
- نستخدم ضمائر المفعول عندما نتحدث عن من يتلقى الفعل (من وقع عليه الفعل).

Subject	I	he	she	it	we	you	they
Object	me	him	her	it	us	you	them



Lessons 1 & 2

To : Nader@gmail.com

From : pupil@prepschool.com

Subject: What do you like to do?

Hey Nader,

I'm happy to write this email to you. How're you and your family? I've been playing a lot of football lately, but I also enjoy reading and taking walks in nature. Sometimes I write in my journal about it! Do you like any of those things? I'd love to hear what you're doing besides studying.

Write soon and tell me your news

Yours, Ali

Lessons 3 & 4

To

: fareed@gmail.com

: uossif@prepschool.com

Subject: Need some help with Math, Uncle Fareed!

Hi Uncle Fareed,

Hope you're doing well in New York! I'm writing because I'm having a problem in math class. I can't understand some of the lessons, although I try to focus with the teacher's explanations.

It's making it hard to study for tests, although I spend a lot of time working on problems.

Do you have any advice on how to get better at math? Maybe there were some tricks you used in school?

Yours, Yossif



Lessons 5 & 6

My Favorite Free-Time Activity

I love spending my free time exploring nature. It's a great way to relax and appreciate the beauty of the world around me. I enjoy walking in the mountains and camping in the forest. There's something so peaceful and calming about nature.

I also like to go fishing and bird watching. It's a great way to learn about different species and know more about life on Earth.

What's your favorite free-time activity?

Al-Azhar Test

I just wanted to share something cool! I recently got into geocaching! It's so interesting learning about it. If you've always dreamed of finding buried treasure, you should definitely give geocaching a try. This is an outdoor treasure-hunting game where you can use GPS to search for hidden containers called "geocaches."

General exercises on Unit 3

I love spending my free time playing sports. It's a great way to stay active and healthy. I enjoy playing football and basketball. They're both interesting sports that I find really fun. Also, I love exploring new places and trying new things. I enjoy visiting museums and art galleries, learning about different cultures and interesting places. Sometimes, I like to go hiking or camping in the mountains, or exploring nearby forests. I also enjoy cooking and baking. I like experimenting with different recipes.

Al Azhar Exercises

-	A: Lister	ning	
Listen and choose	the correct answer	from a, b, c or d:	
			نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب
1. Where did Raneem	spend her holiday?		
a. in Paris	b. In Rome	c. In Italy	d. In Madrid
2. How was the food?			
a. Nasty	b. Bad	c. Expired	d. Delicious
3. What is Aswan famo	us for?		
a. The Eiffel Tower	b. The Pyramids	c. The High Dam	d. The Sphinx
4. What did Raneem be	uy for Riham?		
a. A T-shirt	b. A postcard	c. A camel	d. Nothing
	B: Language l	Functions	
Omplete the follow	wina dialogue:		
		havit their echool	libraru
	Malak are talking a	bout their school	library.
Doha : Is there a libra			
Malak : 10			
Doha : 2			···
Malak: It's on the thir			2
Doha : 8			
Malak : I go there twice	be a week.		
Choose the correct	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. They found a hidder	in the wood	İs.	
a. downtown			d. hobby
2. She has some bead			
a. ingredients			
3. You came first in the			
		c. cache	d. bad
4. Riham invited			
a. we			

5. Ahmed _____ taking a course to improve his English .

b. is

a. am

c. are

d. has



C: Reading Comprehension



Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

My name is Baher. I'm from Port Said. I want to be a doctor so I always work hard at school. My favorite subjects are Science and English. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teachers are very good. I like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. Now, I have a friend from India! My favorite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

A. Answer the following	questions:		
1. Where is Baher from?			8
2. What subjects is Baher	r interested in?		
3. What is Baher's goal?			
B. Choose the correct ar	nswer from a, b	o, c or d:	w S
4. Baher didn't in	England last ye	ear?	
a. swim in a river		b. meet new fr	iends
c. practise his English		d. cycle to sch	ool
5. Baher has a friend from	1		- 129
a. North America	b. Asia	c. Europe	d. Africa
		ake meaningful sentenc	
1. to learn - I - take - new -	11.00		
2. my mother - recipes - fro			
3. painting - and - I - love -			
4. to draw - My - favorite - tl	ning - is - animal	ls	
	D: Wri	ting	
Write a paragraph of F	IVE (5) senten	ces on:	
	"Your unusua	ıl hobby"	
404 system is seemed as a consequence		لوحدةا	[مجاب عنه في آخر ا
unp e to an arrest are are are are are are are are are are			

General Exercises on Unit 3

A: Listening

List	en and choose	the correct ans	wer from a, b, c or	d:
				نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب
1. Male	k has got	brothers.		
a. tw	0	b. three	c. four	d. no
2. Male	ek's father is a /	an		
a. pil	ot	b. engineer	c. workman	d. businessman
3. Male	ek and his familį	y live a		A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR
a. sa		b. stressful	c. troubling	d. happy
		ks in a / an		
a. ba	ınk	b. school	c. company	d. office
		B: Langua	ge Functions	
Con	plete the follo	wing dialogue:		
Salma i	s talking to Gil	nad about last si	ummer vacation	
Salma	: Hello, Gihad.	0		?
Gihad	: Hello, Salma.	I went to Hurgho	ıda last summer.	
Salma	: Who did you	go with?		
Gihad	: @			
Salma	: 13			?
Gihad		a is a very beauti		
Salma	: Did you enjoy	your visit to Hurg	jhada?	
Gihad	: 4			
Salma	: 6			?
Gihad	: We stayed in	a large hotel ther	e.	
Rea	d and complete	e the text with w	ords from the list:	lqui,
	prim	ary - brothers - p	rep - reading - yea	irs
Omara	noes to Tanta 🐔	school	for hous. He is thirt	een @old . He
				er is a nurse . Omar has
				food is rice . He enjoys
		He likes 🧥		



C: Reading Comprehension



Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mona lives with her family in Al- Qanater. She is in Khalid Ibn El-Waleed Prep school. Mona always gets high marks in all subjects. Her father is a doctor in Al- Qanater Hospital. Her mother is a housewife. She cleans the house .She always stays in the kitchen all day. She cooks the food for her family and washes the dishes. Mona has got one brother and one sister. Her brother is twenty-nine years old. He is a doctor in the same hospital with his father.

While the father was going home one evening, he saw a young boy crying by the side of the road. The young boy was very ill. The doctor was very kind. **He** took the young boy to hospital. The young boy was saved and thanked him. Mona's sister is a secretary. She works in an office. She is good at English.

	an omoo. ono	io good at English.			
A. Answer	the followin	g questions:			
1- Why is	s Mona a goo	d student?			
		ng boy crying?			
3- What	does a doctor	do?			
		answer from a, b, a			
4- Mona's	s mother is a	â			
a. teac	her	b. doctor	c. housewife	d. nurse	
5- Her br	other works ir	n a			
a. facto	ory I	b. hospital	c. school	d. company	
6- The ur	nderlined word	d "He" refers to Mor	na's		
a. fathe	er l	b. uncle	c. mother	d. brother	
		D: Vocabulary an	d Structure		
Choose	the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:		
		es tonev			
a. teach	n b	o. organize	c. learn	d. think	
2. Drawing	is a good wa <u>l</u>	y to 🗓 🚐 💶 and (express yourself.		
a. hurry	l b). relax	c. set	d. plan	
Pilots use	e to	o fly planes and to I	know locations of	places.	
	b). beads	c. cupcakes	d. coordinates	
4. My aunt g	gave me a ne	w for ma	king rice pudding		
a. recipe	e b	o. advice	c. journal	d. table	
They usu	ally go	walks in nature	э.		
a. at	b	. to	c. for	d. about	

6.	Yara isn't here	right now. She	her aunt at hos	pital.	
	a. visit	b. is visiting	c. visiting	d. was visited	1
7.	Is Riham going	to invite to yo	our party?		
	a. I	b. me	c. my	d. we	
8.	What	$_{\scriptscriptstyle -}$ Mr. Aziz doing at the m	noment?		
	a. are	b. does	c. is	d. has	
9.	Rahma	sport nowadays. She	wants to keep fi	t.	
	a. are doing	b. does	c. is doing	d. has done	
10.	Waleed and En	nad aren't here.Tell	to come to	omorrow.	
	a. they	b. their	c. theirs	d. them	
(Complete the	sentences with the corr	ect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets	: 4
1.	She is	(write) a story now.			
2.	Ali can help	(she) with the ho	omework.		
3.	Look! A car	(comes) quickly	e •		
4.	Mr. and Mrs. Ko	amal are (buil	t) a new house th	ese days.	
(7)	Punctuate the	e following sentences:			
70		e Sarah and Ella decide		wn geocache	
	no i don t like or				
		Fall & Student	a. napov 12		
			ting newsca.		
3	Write a parag	raph of (80-90) words	on:		
			- 4111200	عنه في آخر الوحدة)	امحاب
		How you spend y	our free time	, , , , ,	
		j9c			
	17/10	to saretrant was see	egodhe all wa		
			- 1		
				90	

Review (A)

Key Vocabul	ary		المفردات الرئيسية
walk (n)	تمشية	position (n)	موقع ، موقف
forest (n)	قبلذ	a couple of	زوج من
good at (n) + (v-ing)	جید فی	face to face	وجهًا لوجه
local community	مجتمع محلي	relatives (n)	آقارب
cooking (n)	الطبخ	get in touch with (v)	يتواصل مع
active (adj)	نشيط	improve (v)	يتحسن
sports center	مرکز ریاضی	compete (v)	يتنافس
indoor (adj)	داخلی	grow (v) grew - grown	يزرع - ينمو
do karate	يمارس الكاراتية	BTW → By the way	على فكر ة/بالمناسبة
chess (n)	شطرنج	TTYL → Talk to you lat	
tournament (n)	بطولة/دورى	summer camp	معسكر صيفى
get second place	يحصل علي المركز الثان	Well done!	احسنت
against (prep)	ضد		

Definitions

huge	ضخم	very big
indoor	داخل	inside a building
volunteer	يتطوع	do something without being paid.
compete	يتنافس	take part in a competition.
tournament	دورة رياضية	a sports competition.
improving	يتحسن	getting better
journal	يوميات	a written record of what you do,
learning	ملحتاا	studying something to understand it better.

Language Notes

` ملاحظات لغوية `

Always / usually and present continuous:

- We can use the present continuous with always to emphasise a habit (nice or annoying)
- Ex. I love being active, so I'm always doing something. (nice habit)

SB 40

Ex. When I'm not at school, I'm usually playing chess. (unusual habit)

SB 40



Reading



SB Page (40)



HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

A Ellie, Sweden

I live next to a huge forest, so I like to go on long walks in nature. I also volunteer some of my time at the local community garden: I help grow vegetables that later go into meals at the community kitchen. Last summer I also volunteered at the kitchen, but I'm not good at cooking!



B Josh, UK

I love being active, so I'm always doing something. I go to the sports center nearly every day. I run and swim there. They have a great indoor swimming pool. I also do karate three times a week, but I'm still learning. I'm not very good yet, but maybe one day I'll compete.



C Luca, Italy

When I'm not at school, I'm usually playing chess (sometimes, at school too!). There's a tournament next month, so I'm training for that right now. In my last one, it was really close: I got second place! I play a lot of games, usually against the computer, but I also spend a lot of time learning about different positions.



D Nadia, Egypt

I feel great when I'm helping others. My mom's a teacher and I help her teach adults to read and write. It's great to see them improving day by day. When I'm not doing that, I like writing about myself. I keep a journal about my life, and I also like to write stories. I often use AI to give me ideas about what to write.





Reading



SB Page (43)





Hi! How's everything? Great⁽¹⁾ to know you won the table tennis tournament⁽²⁾. Well done! I'm so proud of you!⁽³⁾ I would like to play table tennis better. Maybe⁽⁴⁾ you can teach me one day? BTW⁽⁵⁾, did you have a good first week back at school? Mine was OK. It was good to see everyone again. There are a couple of⁽⁶⁾ new students who seem nice.

I do miss the summer vacation, (7) though. I had a great time! Did I tell you that I volunteered (8) at a summer camp (9) for children who can't see? I learned so many skills (10) and met fantastic people.

ا، عظیم

٦. دوري

٣. فخور بك

ع. ريما

ە. على فكرة

٦. زوج من

٧. الاجازة الصيفية

٨. يتطوع

۹. معسکر

ا. مهارات

۱۱. مذکرات ال. مذکرات

۱۲. ساتحدث معك

لاحقا

I really enjoy helping other people, and I think I can do it quite well. I'm reading my summer journal (11) again now to remember everything I did. What was your summer like?

TTYL (12)

Shahd

Reading Skill

معارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

- 1. Where did Shahd volunteer during her summer holiday?
- 2. Infer from the passage how was Shahd's first week back at school?

in better to un

- 3. Shahd was _____ to meet her classmates again.
 - a. happy
- b. sad
- c. nervous
- d. proud

3. d. happy

2. It was OK. (good) I had tubes good out

1. She volunteered in a summer camp for children who can't see.

Answers:



Listening



SB Page (41)





Mariam: Hi, Sarah. I saw some photos of you on social media

yesterday. You were at a party(1). It looked fun!

Sarah : Thanks, Mariam. Yes, I had a great time! It was my

grandmother's 70th birthday party, and we all wanted

it to be special, (2) so we spent weeks preparing (3).

It was hard because there was a lot to do and we

wanted it to be a surprise.(4)

۳. یعد/یجهز ۶. مفاجاة ۵. نظمت

ا. حفله

٦. كانت على اتصال

۷. اعضاء

۸. ممتاز

٩. أقارب

ال أبناء الم

Mariam: Oh, so she didn't know about the party.

Sarah : No, she didn't. Mom organized⁽⁵⁾ everything, but we all helped. My sister

Nadia got in touch(6) with all the family members(7) on social media. I

made cake, and Dad took the photos on the day.

Mariam: And how was the big day?

Sarah : Perfect!(8) My uncle has a café in town, so we had the party there. My

grandfather took my grandmother for a walk and said, "Why don't we

stop for a coffee at the café?". When they went in, we were all there.

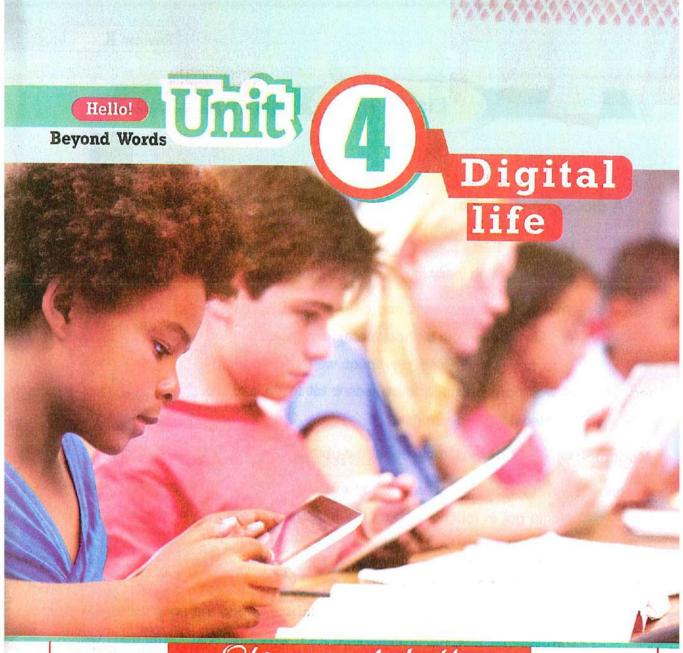
Mariam: That's great! And did you know everyone there?

Sarah : No, I met lots of new relatives⁽⁹⁾. It was also good to see cousins⁽¹⁰⁾ that

I usually just message online. It's much better to chat face-to-face, isn't

it3 Represent camp for chicago

Mariam : True!



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

Information about inventions for a sustainable future; An article; Scammed!:a short story.

Writing:

A blog post about staying safe online: taking part in a technology competition.

Listening:

Understand a dialog about a new app.

Speaking:

Talk about staying safe online: Discuss which devices are important and why.

Language:

Imperatives for instructions; The zero conditional.





إلى المفردات سية Key Vocabulary

1	10124			
سية	mil	1.71	210	اما
سيب	ىرىيد			w

green (adj) مديق للبيئة devices(n) ق sustainable (adj) مستدام run (v) advertisement (n) نالدإ tap (ped)				
sustainable (adj) רוות (v) advertisement (n) משבוע tap (ped)	TM (n)	ماكينة الصراف الآلى	search engine (n)	محرك البحث
advertisement (n) نالدا tap (ped)	reen (adj)	صديق للبيئة	devices(n)	أجهزة
	ustainable (adj)	مستدام	run (v)	يدير
colar papala (n) a till äälle li ale li recuele (d)	dvertisement (n)	إعلان	tap (ped)	ينقر
soldi puriets (II) dimami decem recocce (d)	olar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	recycle (d)	یعید تدویر
battery (n)	attery (n)	بطارية	insert (ed)	يُدخِل – يُدرِج
social media (n) مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي press (ed)	ocial media (n)	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي	press (ed)	يضغط على
fitness (n) اللياقة البدنية click (ed)	ness (n)	اللياقة البدنية	click (ed)	يضغط على زرار

Inventions for a sustainable future

- Tree-planting projects.
- Solar-powered airplanes.
- Plant-based batteries.
- Ocean clean-up projects.
- EcoATM

مشاريع زراعة الأشجار

طائرات تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية

بطاريات نباتية (بها مكونات عضوية)

مشاريع تنظيف المحيطات

ماكينة الصراف الآلى البيئية (صديقة البيئة)

Vocabulary	The total America	ية –	المفردات الاضاف
technology (n)	التكنولوجيا	camera icon (n)	رمز الكاميرا
electricity (n)	كهرباء	color bar (n)	شريط الألوان
planet (n)	کوکب	eraser (n)	ممحاة
invention (n)	اختراع الج	folder (n)	مجلد
online (adv)	عبر الانترنت	sign (n)	لافتة
Eco-friendly (adj)	ملائمة للبيئة	clean power (n)	طاقة نظيفة
AppErture (n)	تطبيق لتعديل الصور	scientist (n)	إمالد
emojis (n)	رموز تعبيرية	infographic (n)	رسم بیانی

er a mentangunt

	f -		
حذف	delete (d)	عنوان (مقال – کتاب)	title (n)
مرر على شاشة التليفون	scroll (ed)	محيط	ocean (n)
پثبت/یرکب	install (ed)	دفتر العناوين	address book (n)
يجر/يسحب	drag (ged)	مؤثرات	effects (n)
يطور	develop (ed)	سيارات تعمل بالكهرباء	electric cars (n)
يواجه	face (d)	ينتج	produce (d)
	2 ~		

Expressions & Prepositions

			and the second s
go online	يتصل بالأنترنت	esay-to-read	سهلة القراءة
keep the money	يحفظ المال	take care of = look after	یعتنی ب
take (sth) back	يُعيد/يُرجِج	take (money) out	يسحب/يُخرج المال
take away	يُزيل	put (money) into	يُودع/يضَعَ المال
take a photo	يلتقط صورة	share with	يشارك مئ
point the camera	وجهه الكاميرا	switch on	ڸؙۺۼؚڶ
"Save" folder	مجلد الحفظ	click on	يضغط على
full of	مملؤب	thanks for + (v-ing)	شکرًا من اجل
look like	تبدو/تشبه	on the right / left of	على يمين/يسار
make electricity	يولد كهرباء	put down	يضع/يترك من يده
A TAG		dragto	يسحبإلى

^{*}ATM is the abbreviation for automated / automatic teller machine.

^{*} Digital Life is the opposite of "Real life".

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Antonym / Op	المضاد posite
exciting	مثير	interesting	boring	ممل
traditional	تقليدى	classical	new / modern	حديث
easy	سهل	simple	hard	بدص
show	يعرض	display	hide	يخبئ
remember	يتذكر	recall	forget	ينسى
delete	يحذف	remove	insert	یدخل/یدرج

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
eco-	مرتبط بالبيئة	EcoATM
re-	تعطى معنى التكرار	recycle
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	invention
-ing	تحول الفعل الى اسم	recycling
-able	تحول الفعل الى صفة	sustainable

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	Ċ	تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة
Present	Past simple	Past Participle
show ضيحرض	showed	shown
رېنسى forget	forgot	forgotten
يحفظ beep	kept	kept
يختار choose	chose	chosen
send يرسل	sent	sent
fly يطير	flew	flown
run يدير	ran mana at a sa	run

Language Notes



1) tap / click

- tap (v.) يلمس برفق "على سطح الشاشة"
- Ex. Eman tapped on her mobile screen to make a call.
- سُغط "على زر فارة أو لوحة مفاتيح" (v click (v دفاتيح "
- Ex. Ali clicked on the camera icon to open it.

2) verb patterns

- stop + -ing = (finish)
- Ex. Don't stop pressing.
- help + (object) + inf / or to + inf
 - Ex. We need new ways to help us take/ to take care of our planet.
- show/ tell + object + how to + inf
- Ex. I can show you how to use it.
- Ex. Tell me how to use the video call app.

(3) electricity / electric / electronic

- electricity (n) a form of energy الكهرباء
- Ex. These panels make electricity using the sun.
- electric (adj.) کھردی – أشياء تعمل بواسطة الكهرباء (الأجهزة/الأدوات).
- Ex. Electric cars are good for the environment.

electronic (adj.)

اليكتروني (الأجهزة المصممة للعمل بالتيار الكهربي)

Ex. Electronic devices.

Ex. An electronic calculator.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- the OK button to start.
 - a. Tap

- b. Beark
- c. Sit
- d. Click

- 2. Listen to me and stop _____ noise. a. making
 - b. makes
- c. to make
- d. made

- 3. We need to buy an.....
 - a. electricity
- b. electric
- c. electronic
- d. electrical

- 4. My mom always helps me____ doing
- _ mu homework.

- b. to doing
- c. do
- d. did
- 5. Can you show me how_____this machine?

- a. start
- b. to start
- c. to starting
- d. starts



Reading



SB Page (45)

Inventions for a sustainable future



Our world has many problems. We need new ways to help us take care of⁽¹⁾ our planet⁽²⁾ and fix some of the problems it faces⁽³⁾. Here are some exciting new inventions which will help us.



Tree-planting projects

When we go online, we see online advertisements(4). Some search engines(5) give the money they get from advertisements to help treeplanting projects(6) around the world.



EcoATMs

We use regular(12) ATMs(13) to take money out or put money into our banks. Eco-friendlu(14) ATMs help us recycle(15) old electronic devices(16). When you put your old device in it. the machine tells you how much money you can have for it. You can keep the money or give it to a charitu(17)!



Solar-powered airplanes

Most airplanes(7) aren't good for our planet. Solarpowered(8) airplanes fly using power⁽⁹⁾ that comes from solar panels(10). It is very clean power. The planes can flu around the world, day or night. It's an exciting new invention(11) for the future!



Plant-based batteries

Scientists are developing batteries(18) that work using material(19) from plants. The way these batteries are made is better for the environment than traditional(20) batteries. In the future, they could even produce(21) enough power to run electric cars(22)!

الكهر باثبة

۲۵. مشروعات

ه ٦. القمامة

Ocean clean-up projects

The world's oceans(23) are full of plastic which is very bad for life in the ocean. Ocean clean-up project(24) collect rubbish(25) in the water, then ships take it back to land for recycling.





٦. کوکب

۳. بواجه

ع. اعلانات

ه. محركات البحث

٦. ٧-مشروعات زراعة الاشحار

٧. طائرات

٨. التي تسير بالطاقة الشمسية

و طاقة

١٠. ألواح الطاقة

الشمسية

ال اختراع

ال. عادية

١٣. ماكينات الصرف الآلية

١٤. صديقة للبيئة

ها. یعید تدویر

١٦. أجهزة الكترونية ١٧. حمعية خيرية

۱۸. بطاریات

١٩. مادة

٦٠. قديمة ۱۱. تنتج

۲۲. السنارات

۲۳. محیطات

تنظيف



Listening



SB Page (46)



SB Page (46)

Amir : Hi, Selim. Thanks for telling me about APPeErture(1)

I'm really excited!.

Selim: No problem! I can show you how to use it if you

want. Have you got the app on your phone yet?

Amir : Yes, I have! I want to truit now! Show me how to use

it!

Selim: OK. First, tap(2) the app to open it. Can you see the

camera icon(3)?

Amir : Here? Yes.

Selim: Press⁽⁴⁾ on the icon for one second and it will open your photos. "Don't

stop pressing. Wait until they open. Then choose a photo you want to

change⁽⁵⁾.

Amir : Right. Here's a photo of my cat, Fluffy!

Selim : Sweet! You have a black cat... do you want to make it another color?

Amir :OK!

Selim: Open the color bar(6) and choose the

color you want.

Amir : Haha! I have a purple cat! What

about these effects(7)? Look! I can

use the eraser(8) to take away your

bed. You look like you're flying now!

How can I save the photo?

Selim : Keep your finger on the photo and drag it to the "Save" folder. Now share

it with me, please! I love it!

Amir : I will! Thanks, Selim.

ا- تطبيق لتعديل

الصور

٦- يلمس برفق

۳-رمز/أيقونة ٤-يضغط على

ە-يىغىر/يغىر-ە

٦- شريط الألوان

۷-مۇثرات

۸-ممحاه



ا- مكالمة فيديو

٣- سماعات الأذن

3- دليل العناوين

۱- شغل

ە- شاشة

٧- تذكر

٦- في النهاية

٨- كاميرا الويب



SB Page (47)

Amira : Can you tell me how to use the video call(1) app?

Samia: Sure, It's really easy. Switch on(2) your laptop!

Amira : Done! What's next?

Samia: Open the video call program. And don't forget to

connect your headphones (3)!

Amira : OK.

Samia: Then click the address book(4).

Amira: Is it on right of my screen (5)?

Samia: No, It's on the left. Next find the name you want.

Amira : I found Nermine. What now?

Samia: Finally⁽⁶⁾, just click on her name to call her! Remember⁽⁷⁾ to open your

webcam(8) too!.

Amira : Thank you Samia!

Exercises on Vocabulary



Complete the following dialogue:

Jana and Malak are talking about Jana's new phone.

Malak: Is this your new phone?

Jana: Yes, it is.

Malak: 1

Jana: My father bought it.

Malak: 2

Jana : Because I came first at the English test.

Malak: Do you know how to use it?

Malak: Yes, first charge it for 3 hours.

Jana: Done! What's next?

Malak:

Jana: Thank uou veru much.

Malak: (5)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1.	powered	airplanes fly using p	ower that comes	from the sun.
	a. Wind	b. Folder	c. Oil	d. Solar
2.	I want to edit this old	photo. I'll download	a/an	to do this.
	a. device	b. app	c. machine	d. advice
3.	Use the eraser to	something in	a photo.	
	a. make	b. eat	c. delete	d. break
4.	EcoATN	ls help us recycle ol	d devices.	
	a. friendly	b. friend	c. friends	d. friendship
5.	the photo	o to the "Save" folder		
	a. Dig	b. Drag	c. Drug	d. Draw
6.	My camera didn't wor	k well so I couldn't .	any p	hotos.
	a. make	b. paint	c. take	d. play
7.	Stop to e	each other during the	lesson.	
	a. talking	b. to talk	c. talked	d. talks
		Bit by Bit Exe	rcises	
8.	You made a mistake. [Delete the word "it" a	nd "the	em".
	a. run	b. kill	c. insert	d. study
9.	The car won't start. Th	ne needs	charging.	
	a. radio	b. wheel	c. window	d. battery
10.	Solar mal	ke electricity using th	e sun.	
	a. panels	b, plants are	c. plans	d. planets
11.	the icon	on your mobile phone	е.	
	a. Click	b. Tap	c. Send	d. Break
12.	He is a teacher. He ha			
	a. repair	b. rub	c. run	d. walk
13.	sites such	as Facebook and T	witter make the v	vorld a small place
	a. Social life		b. Social science	e.,
	c. Social media		d. Social studies	6
14.	If you want to sell you	A 42		
	a. advertisement	b. picture	c. news	d. information

15.	Is there a/an	near here? I nee	ed to take some r	noney out.
	a. market		c. ATM	d. cafe
16.	The shop is full of nev	w electronic		
	a. wires	b. voices	c. advice	d. devices
17.	We can use information.	engines, like Goo	gle and Yahoo to	search for
	a. Research	b. Sea	c. Search	d. Run
18.1	My dream is to live in (a city wh	ere there is no p	ollution.
	a. white	b. green	= 8 S	d. red
19.	The coach gave him o	week to improve his	.	
	a. fatness			d. kindness
20.	The opposite of the w			
	a. new	b. old	c. ancient	d. classical
21.7	The prefix			
	a. re-	b. trans-		d. eco-
22.	We can change the ve	erb invent into a noun	by adding	
	aer	bion	cless	
			U1033	uiut
	-	pressions & Prepo		
23.T	-	pressions & Prepo	sitions Exercise	
	hankstellir	pressions & Prepo	sitions Exercise s.	
24.5	hankstellira. to a. to She had taken all her r	pressions & Preporting me about the news b. for moneyof	sitions Exercises. c. about f her account.	es
24.S	hankstellira, to a. to She had taken all her ra a. in	pressions & Preporting me about the newsons b. for money of b. about	sitions Exercise s. c. about f her account. c. with	d. in d. out
24.S 25. 1	Thankstelling. to She had taken all her rad. in a can use the eraser to	pressions & Preports ong me about the news b. for moneyof b. about	sitions Exercise s. c. about f her account. c. with e car behind you.	d. in d. out
24.S 25. 1	Thanks telling. to She had taken all her rad, in a can use the eraser to a. way	pressions & Preports ong me about the news b. for oneyof b. about takethe b. away	sitions Exercise s. c. about f her account. c. with e car behind you. c. out	d. in d. out d. into
24.S 25. 1	Thankstelling. to She had taken all her rad. in a can use the eraser to	pressions & Preports ong me about the news b. for oneyof b. about takethe b. away	sitions Exercise s. c. about f her account. c. with e car behind you. c. out	d. in d. out d. into
24.S 25. I	Thanks telling. to She had taken all her rad, in a can use the eraser to a. way	b. for b. about the new b. for takethe b. away the words to make m	sitions Exercise s. c. about f her account. c. with e car behind you. c. out	d. in d. out d. into
24.S 25. I	Thanks telling at to the had taken all her real in the can use the eraser to a. way Reorder the following the cans - are - full of - vertical telling at the content of the conten	pressions & Preports b. for money of b. about take the b. away mg words to make me world's - The - plasti	sitions Exercise s. c. about f her account. c. with e car behind you. c. out leaningful sente c.	d. in d. out d. into
24.S 25. I	Thanks telling at to the had taken all her real at a in the can use the eraser to a way Reorder the following a ceans - are - full of - way the camera - on it - click the came	pressions & Preports b. for money of b. about take the b. away mg words to make me world's - The - plastick ck - icon - and - Find.	sitions Exercise s. c. about f her account. c. with c car behind you. c. out leaningful sente c.	d. in d. out d. into
24.S 25. I 1. d - 2. t	Thanks telling at to the had taken all her real in a can use the eraser to a way Reorder the following the camera - on it - click can not - I - my - use -	pressions & Preporting me about the news b. for money of b. about take the b. away ag words to make money world's - The - plastick - icon - and - Find.	sitions Exercise s. c. about f her account. c. with e car behind you. c. out	d. in d. out d. into
24.S 25. I 1. c 2. t 3. c	Thanks telling at to the had taken all her real at a in the can use the eraser to a way Reorder the following the camera - on it - click the camera	pressions & Preports b. for noney of b. about take the b. away ng words to make m world's - The - plastick ck - icon - and - Find.	sitions Exercise s. c. about f her account. c. with c car behind you. c. out eaningful sente c.	d. in d. out d. into



Language

قوفا عدامة

The imperative الأمر

Affirmative

Negative

أمر مثبت

أمر منفي

باقي الجملة + Inf

باقى الجملة + Don't + inf

Ex. Show me how to use it!

Ex. Don't stop pressing.

Ex. Tap the app to open it.

Ex. Don't stay up late.

• لتكوين صيغة الأمر نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل في الأمر المثبت. ونبدأ بـ (Never/Don't) في الأمر المنفى + مصدر الفعل



- ا. يمكن استخدام Always قبل الأمر المثبت.
- يمكن استخدام Never بدلا من Don't في الأمر المنفى.
 - ٣. يمكن استخدام Just / please لتقليل حدة الأمر.
- ٤. لا يتم استخدام الضمير You قبل الأمر إلا في حالة تأكيد الأمر.
 - ه. عند إعطاء الأمر بفعل يكون نبدأ بـ Be.

Exercises on Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

b. will turn

SB Exercises

left. 1.To reach the station.

c. turning d. turn

2.____ your phone in the library.

d. Use

d. forgets

d. Doesn't use b. Don't used

SB

3. Don't _____ to connect your head phones!

SB

SB

c. forgotten a. forget b. forgot

SB

4. _____ the name you want to call.

a. Find b. Founds d. Finds

- 5. Always _____ hard.
 - b. will studu
- c. studied

c. Finding

c. Never use

d. study

- 6. Don't ____ your rubbish here.
 - a. leaves

a. took

a. studies

a. turns

- b. leave
- c. left
- d. leaving

- 7. Point the camera and _____ the photo!
 - b. takes
- c. take
- d. takina

- 8. Stop talking and_____your book.
- d. open

Bit by Bit Exercises

9.	Student: Can I le	eave the room?			
	Teacher: No. Yo	u here.			1
	a. stays	b. stay	c. will stay	d. staying	
10.	eat ir	n the class.			1
	a. Not	b. Always	c. Never	d. Do	
11.	Hassan,	eat in the class.			
	a. ever	b. doesn't	c. don't	d. isn't	
12.	quiet,	, please. The baby is sl	eeping.		
	a. Be	b. Been	c. Being	d. Is	
13.	Riham,	the window.			
	a. close	b. closed	c. closes	d. closing	
14.	Malek,	$_{ extstyle -}$ your shoes and let's $\mathfrak g$	go out.		
	a. put on	b. to put on	c. puts on	d. putting on	
15.		wer, your l		1 1 1 m 1 m	
	a. raise	b. raised	c. raises	d. raising	
16.		_ the lights before you	MAN DE LOS AMONGOS		
		b. turned off		d. turning off	
		your bags. We are trav			
		b. packed	c. packs	d. packing	
		oat. It is getting hot.			
		b. Took off	c. Takes off	d. Taking off	
		the phone , please.			
		b. answered	c. answers	d. answering	
		rubbish in the street.	section.		
		b. throwing	c. throw		
		our book or the teache			
10	a. forgot	b. forgets		17	
3	Complete the sen	tences with the correc	ct form of the wo	ord(s) in brackets	3:
		_{бегрија} SB Exerci	sesis lipa		
		(stopped) pressing.		SB	
2. /	Always	(presses) on the icon	to open it.	SB	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
3. 1	Never	(skips) your importar	nt lessons.	SB	5 6
4. (Open the color bar	and(chose	e) the color you v	vant!	5 . 0

Bit	by	Bit	Ex	erc	is	es

		Marie Control of the	THE SECOND STREET, STR	
5. Stop ta	lking and	(listening) to me.	2
6. Omar, ₋	(s	<mark>tudy)</mark> your lesson:	s regularly.	
7. Boys, _	(D	id) your best to su	icceed.	
8	(Kept) yo	ur finger on the ph	noto and drag it.	
9. Ali,	(sho	ws) me how to ans	swer this question.	
10	(Swimmir	ng) in this dangero	ous area.	
	Cener	N Exercise	on Less	ons 1& 2
/_		wing dialogue:		
A tourist	is asking You	ıssef.		
Tourist	: Can you he	elp me, please?		
Youssef	: 1			
Tourist	: How can I	go to the sports co	enter?	
Youssef	: 2			
Tourist	: 🚳			?
Youssef	: About 50 m	inutes on foot.		
Tourist	: <u>@</u>			?
Youssef	: Yes, you co	an take a taxi.		
Tourist	: 6			
Youssef	: You are we	lcome!		
Choos	e the correct	answer from a, l	b, c or d:	
1. I'm goin	g to try to be o	bit greener and	more.	<u>.</u>
a. dama	ige	b. harm	c. kill	d. recycle
			ost its power.	
		b. battery button to start.	c. plate	d. knife
a. Tap	the Enter		c. Break	d. Hat
	d in the form, I		your do	
a. insert			c. remove	
		your headph		(SB)
a. press		b. collect	c. connect	d. delete

					(nessons I	OCZ
6.	to open	your webcam too	o!		SB	
	a. Remembering	b. Remembered	d c.	Remembers	d. Remember	
7.	obey yo	ur parents.				
	a. Never		C.	Rarely	d. Always	
8.	Don't in t	he classroom.				
	a. running	b. runs	C.	run	d. ran	
9.	me how					
anam.	a. Show		C.	Shows	d. Showing	
10.	Go straight on then				7	L
	a. turning	b. turn	C.	turns	d. turned	
6						
3	Complete the sente	nces with the co	orrect f	orm of the wo	ord(s) in brackets	
,	(*					
1.	(Inserti	ng) the key into t	ne car	door.		
2.	Don't move!	(Waiting) her	re.			
3.	(Not) eat	unhealthy food.				
4.	(Installs)	this app on your	phone			
5.	(Don't hel	n) the poor.				
1-	Write a paragraph o	100	on:			
	write a paragraph (or (00-30) Words	OII.			
					اب عنه في آخر الوحدة	(مج
		"Future p	projects	,"		
17.17						-
						-
	••••					-
						=
			17.11	Target C		
		فقرة اانشائية:	كتابة الذ	عن الأسئلة الآتية	مكنك من خلال الاجابة	ı
-	Why should we have inv	entions?	- What	kind of inventio	ns should we have i	n
- 1	What are the problems w	hich we face?	the futu	ire?		
-	How can we deal with th	ese problems?		ettod		
					مكن استخدام العبارات	J
- (Our world faces	(be) capius	- We ha		entions like	
	We should stand togethe		and			





Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

مات) hacker (n)	هاكر (متسلل يختلس المعلو	understanding (n)	فهم
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الالكتروني	hide behind	يختبئ خلف
aim (n)	هدف/غاية	post (n/v.ed)	ينشر/منشور
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	accept (ed)	يوافق
platform (n)	منصة (للتواصل الاجتماعي)	cool (ed)	يبرد
difference (n)	فرق/ اختلاف	prove (d)	يبرهن على/يثبت
fact (n)	حقيقة	solve (d)	يحل
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	freeze (d)	يُجِمُد
nasty (adj)	قبیح/بغ <mark>ی</mark> ض		

Vocabulary	
THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NOT THE OWNER.	-
	00
	1000
	Carles III

المفردات الاضافية

rude (adj)	وقح	rules (n)	قواعد
upset (adj)	منزعج	password (n)	كلمة السر (كلمة المرور)
horrible (adj)	سئ/فظيئ	character (n)	حرف/علامة (كتابية)
simple (adj)	سهل/بسيط	date of birth (n)	تاريخ الميلاد
account (n) بنارنت لانترنت	حساب بنگی/او ح	comment (n)	تعليق
friend requests (n)	طلبات صداقة	false name (n)	اسممزيف
tablet (n)	جهاز لوحی	top tip (n)	نصيحة هامة
mix of (n)	خليط من	delete (d)	يحذف
link (n)	رابط الكترونى	control (led)	يسيطر على
personal information (n) قبة	معلومات شخصي	design (ed)	يصمم
young people (n) = youth	الشباب	download (ed)	يحمل (تطبيق)
relationship (n)	علاقة	guess (ed)	يخمن
behavior (n)	سلوك	record (ed)	يسجل
natural (adj)	طبيعى	bully (ied)/(n)	يتنمر/الشخص المتنمر
solid (adj)	صلب	chat (ted)	یدردش (یتکلم بشکل ودی)

Definitions

هاکر hacker	a person who uses computers to get hold of private information		
ينشر post	to put on social media.		
nasty ضيف	very bad or unkind		
يوافق accept	agree to something.		
cyberbullying التنمر الالكتروني	treating someone bad either online or through electronic messaging.		
hide behind یختبئ خلف	to put yourself in a position where you cannot be seen.		
prove يبرهن	to show that something is true.		
aim فدف	what you want to achieve when you do something.		
cool איענ /	to lose heat.		
يجمد عمد	to turn water into ice.		
efficiently بكفاءة	quickly and with good results.		
جهاز device	a small electronic machine		

Expressions & Prepositions

		the state of the s	
check social media وسائل التواصل و	يتصفح	put in a password	توضع في كلمة المرور
بن عبر الانترنت stay / keep safe online	یبقی آم	in short	باختصار
عليق/صورة post a comment / a photo	ينشر ت	careful of	حريص بشان
download an app تطبيق	يُحمُّل	deletefrom	يحذفمن
stay forever يالأبد	يبقى الر	chat with	يتحدث مغ
click on links (De) DDO3 على الروابط		out with friends	بالخارج مع الأصدقاء
as a result of Jä	کنتیجا	at sea level	بمستوى سطح البحر
accept a request	يقبل ح	cool to	تنخفض درجة حرارته الى
do tests عمل اختبارات	يقوم ب		4-3



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite	
horrible	سئ جدًا	terrible	terrific / fantastic	رائج
nasty	بغيض	hateful	admirable	محبوب
simple	سهل/بسیط	easy	hard	صعب
special	مميز/فريد	unique	popular	شائع
false	مزیف	wrong	correct	صحيح
personal	شخص	private	public	رەلد
strong	قوى	powerful	weak	ضعيف

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
cyber-	مرتبط بالإنترنت	cyberbully
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	understanding
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	hacker
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	efficiently
un-	تحول الصفة الى عكسها	unpleasant

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		فات الأفعال غير المنتظمة		
Present		Past simple	Past Participle	
hide	يختبئ	hid	hidden	
send	يرسل الله	sent	sent	
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept	
freeze	يتجمد	froze	frozen	
tell	يخبر	told	told	
	UNB SV		, and the second of the second of	



1) platform

Ex. Which platform does the train leave from?

Ex. I often use social media platforms like Facebook.

رصيف في محطة القطار.

منصة (تواصل اجتماعی)

) it's + صفة + to -inf.

اذا بدأت الحملة بالتعبير. (صفة + £†أ)، يأتي بعده فعل بالمصدر مسبوقا بـ (to) :

- Ex. It's important to study hard for the exam.
- Ex. It's kind of you to help me.

روب/مثل: like)

يمكن استخدام كلمة (like) كفعل بمعنى (يحب) او كحرف جر بمعنى (مثل):

Ex. I like apples.

(أحب التفاح)

Ex. Things like glass, paper, and plastic can be recycled.

(مثل)

(شخصية/حرف هجائي :character

تستخدم کلمة (character) بمعنی (شخصیة) او بمعنی (حرف هجائی):

Ex. He has a cheerful character.

(شخصية مرحه)

Ex. The English alphabet has 26 characters.

(حروف هجائية)

5) accept / agree

• accept + noun

يقبل شيء

• agree + to -inf. يوافق على فعل شيء

Ex. He accepted my request.

Ex. She agreed to wait for me.

Check on Language Notes V

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Twitter, Facebook and WhatsApp are social media.
 - a. bins

- b. platforms
- c. pavements
- d. roads
- 2. The teacher didn't _____ to let me leave early.
 - a. accept
- b. tell
- c. keep
- d. agree
- 3. It's bad of her ____ at her teacher like that.
- a, to shout
- b. shouting c. shouted
- d. shouts
- 4. I am proud of my dad. I want to be _____ him one day.
 - a. such
- b. like
- C. SO
- d. but



Reading and listening skills



SB Page (48)



SB Page (48)

استمع إلى النصوص



When you go online to send messages, play video games, download an app or just check⁽¹⁾ your social media⁽²⁾, it's important to remember a few simple rules⁽³⁾ that can keep you safe.



ا- يتصفح ۲- وسائل التواصل الاجتماعی ۳- قواعد وقوانین ٤- رموز کتابیة ۵- مخترقین/ متسللین

1. Choose strong passwords:

It's important to use a password that is a mix of letters, numbers, and special characters⁽⁴⁾ like! & or \$. Long passwords are also a good idea as they are hard to guess. Never use your name or date of birth, your pet's name, or anything that hackers⁽⁵⁾ can guess from your social media.

2. Think before you post:

When you post a **comment**⁽⁶⁾ or photo on social media, it stays there **forever**⁽⁷⁾ - even if you **delete** ⁽⁸⁾ it from your account. Don't post or share anything nasty or false.

٦- تعليق ٧- للأبد ٨- يحذف

3. Be careful of friend requests:

Don't accept friend requests⁽⁹⁾ from people you don't know.

Always tell your parents if someone you don't know sends you messages or wants to chat with you and don't click on any links they send you. Never share personal information⁽¹⁰⁾ with anyone.

9- طلبات صداقة ١- معلومات شخصية

4. Be kind online:

Cyberbullying⁽¹¹⁾ is a big problem for young people. It's easier for bullies to post horrible messages online as they can hide behind a <u>false</u> name. Cyberbullying can happen any time you are online-at home, at school, or out with your friends. Tell an adult if someone is bullying you. And always be kind online.

اا- التنمر الالكتروني



Reading Skill		مهارة القراءة [ا	
1.The passage is mainly about			يتحدث النص عن
a. social media platforms b. staying	safe online	c. mobile phones	d. tablets
2.The opposite of the word "false" can be			
a. wrong b. incorrect	et .	c. untrue	d. true
Summarize the last paragraph in one senter	nce.		لخ <mark>ص الفقرة الأخيرة في جملة</mark>
ي آمر ر	لة والتي تحافظ عليك	راعد البسيطة والقلب	مقال بخدر بخغتت أههمال بيد
1. 090 4.7 70 983344	لة والتى تحافظ عليك	راعد البسيطة وال <mark>قلي</mark>	
ه آمن. 2. Don't post or share anything nasty or false. 3. Never share personal information with anyon			من المهم أن تتذكر بعض القو لا تنشر أى شى قبيح أو خاطئ. لا تشارك أى معلومات شخصيذ
 Don't post or share anything nasty or false. Never share personal information with anyon 	ne.	ة مع اي شخص.	لا تنشر أى شى قبيح أو خاطئ. لا تشارك أى معلومات شخصية
 Don't post or share anything nasty or false. Never share personal information with anyon 	ne. ople.	ة <mark>مه ا</mark> ی شخص. سن.	لا تنشر أى شى قبيح أو خاطئ. لا تشارك أى معلومات شخصيا التنمر مشكلة كبيرة لصغار الـ pe quopung ourpue.
 Don't post or share anything nasty or false. Never share personal information with anyon Cyberbullying is a big problem for young personal. 	ne. ople.	ة مع أي شخص. سن. يروns broprem يود	لا تنشر أى شى قبيح أو خاطئ. لا تشارك أى معلومات شخصيا التنمر مشكلة كبيرة لصغار الـ pe King ourjue?



SB Page (50)

A talk about science and technology

Science and technology- so what's the difference?

The main difference⁽¹⁾ between science and technology is that they have different aims ⁽²⁾. Science tries to increase⁽³⁾ our understanding⁽⁴⁾ of how the world and everything in it works. Technology tries to solve problems⁽⁵⁾ and help us to do things more efficiently⁽⁶⁾. Science is about asking questions about the natural world, questions like, if this happens, why does this

7- اهداف ۳- يزيد ٤- فهم ٥- حل المشكلات

ا-اختلاف

٦- بكفاءة

always happen next? It's about looking carefully and recording exactly what we see. In science, when we believe something is true, we do tests to check our ideas. If we can use science to prove something, we know it is a fact. For example, we can do tests to show that, at sea level, if fresh water cools to a temperature of zero degrees Celsius, it always freezes into solid ice.

In technology, we use the information we learn from science to solve problems and find new ways to do things. Sometimes we do this by making devices which can help us like phones and computers. If you want to understand the relationship between science and technology, think about electricity. Many devices use electricity. We can't design a new phone if we don't understand how electricity works. So, in short science can explain this for us. In short, science is about understanding the world, but technology is about doing things to help it.

(1)	<u>Exercises</u> (on Vocabulary		
Complete the fol	lowing dialogue:			
Hani and Sami are t		al media		
Sami : Hi, Hani. Do y	you always go onlin	e and check socia	l media?	
				•
			om dan	?
Hani : I spend from			ery ady. ·	?
Hani : I can keep sa	fe online by not sho	aring any personal	information with	λ
people? I do				
Sami: Do you have Hani:	<i>∞</i> 0			
Sami : How often do				
	- 1.771-1-1. He indicated into the artists in the			
14	ect answer from a,			
	A STATE OF THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF THE	ry & SB Exercise	S	
1 is to sho				
a. Prove		c. Freeze	73	
2. Don't fr				
	b. refuse		d. agree	
3. Don't post or share	1972 ST 1			
a. last 4means	b. fast	\$155	d. nasty	
	b. Efficiently		d Wronglu	
5. When you		and the second s		
a. poster	b. post	c. kill	d. think	
- P	and from a	Exercises		
0.1/	50020	The state of the s	e Sui.	
6. You can protect you			E 1979 1979	
a. Hackers	b. Hats		d. Guests	
7. Egyptians' main				
a. aid8. The school wants th		c. aim		
			d. understanding	

a. melts

9. Water _____ at 0 Celsius.

b. dies

c. freezes

d. drinks

10. Don't give people you	u don't know your	informat	ion.
a. local	b. national	c. personal	d. personality
11. It is hot here. Please	turn on the air condit	tioning to	the room.
a. warm	b. warn	c. cool	d. tool
12.He asked me about m	y of birth		
a. date	b. tablet	c. pet	d. name
13. I couldn't meet him a	s the address was wr	ritten in Chinese_	
 a. platforms 	b. characters	c. ideas	d. fans
14. You need to know the	eto use	the laptop.	
a. hacker	b. passport	c. password	d. buses
15. The prefix "cyber-" in o	cyberbulling means		
a. water	b. internet	c. shop	d. mall
16.I the lates	st album of Amr Diab	from the internet	
a. stole	b. rubbed	c. guessed	d. downloaded
	Expressions & pr	epositions	
17. Don't spend much tim	neSoc	cial media every o	day.
a. checking			
18. The main	The state of the s		
a. importance			
19. Scientists are still			
a. making			d. doing
20.You should stay			
a. site		c. safe	d. save
21.Don't on t	he links you receive	from people you	don't know.
a. freeze			
22.Sorry I deleted the file			
			d. from
Read and complete	the text with words	s from the list:	
	- horrible - terrific -	TO SHOULD BE A	out with
Cyerbullying is a big pro	Managara and Anna Andrews	ELECTRONIC TO STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PART	
			2000 2000
online as bullies can 🙆 - ime you are online-at hon			
3 Punctuate the follo			Andrew St. Co., 19 Sept. 10 Telephone
1. if i don t wear my glas	ses i can t see well -		
2. why does mr. ahmed	sau that		



Language

قواعد لغوية

The Present Simple

تذكر: المضارع البسيط

التكوين Form

✔ يتكون المضارع البسيط من التصريف الأول للفعل كما يلى:

go play eat watch

√ يضاف للفعل (s - es - ies) إذا كان الفاعل مفرد غاثب (it - she - he).

goes plays eats watches

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع +inf.

(He / She / It / اسم مفرد +inf. + (s / es / ies)

الاثبات:

Ex. Ali lives in Cairo.

Ex. We go to school by bus.

النفي:

Ex. They don't have time for playing.

Ex. She doesn't like ice cream.

السؤال Question

Yes - No

Ex. Do you study French?

Ex. Does Ali like chess?

Wh

Ex. When do they arrive?

Ex. Where does he work?

The Zero Conditional الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

✔ يستخدم المضارع البسيط في فعل الشِرط وجواب الشرط في الجالة الصفرية.

We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true.

✔ تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق العلمية والأشياء الصحيجة دائمًا والعادات المتكررة:

Ex. If / when you boil water, it changes into steam.

Ex. If I feel thirsty, I always drink water.

التكوين Form

If / When + present simple + present simple مضارع بسيط مضارع بسيط

present simple if / when present simple مضارع بسيط

- 🧹 تستخدم جملة جواب الشرط لتكوين سؤال:
- Ex. If we mix red and yellow, what do we get?
- 🚄 يمكن استخدام الحالة الصفرية في إعطاء الأوامر (في حالة عدم وجود فاعل في جملة جواب الشرط)
- Ex. If something doesn't seem right, think and speak to your parents.
 - 🧹 لاحظ استخدام وعدم استخدام الفاصلة السفلية بين الجملتين:
- Ex. If you add 2 and 2(,) you get 4.
- Ex. You get 4 if you add 2 and 2.
 - اذا بدأنا الجملة الشرطية بـ (If/When) نضعَ فاصلة بين الجملتين 🕢

Exercises on Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1.	1. If it in the desert, plants can appear.				
	a. rain	b. rained	c. rains	d. raining	
2.	If you want a good pho	one, you	to spend money.		SE
	a. has	b. have	c. had	d. having	
3.	you press	this button, it takes	a photo.		SB
	a. If	b. Of	c. What	d. Off	
		Bit by Bit Exe	rcises		
4.	If we heat ice, it	naetenien	ToJ Osefi		

- a. melt b. melts c. melting d. melted
- 5. If I am late for work, I ____ a taxi.
- a. took b. takes c. taking d. take
- 6. If we _____ water, it turns into ice.
 - a. froze b. freeze c. frozen d. freezing

Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets: SB Exercises 1. If I don't wear my glasses, I ______ (not / can) see well. 2. If you play lots of video games, your eyes ______ (got) tired. 3. If you ______ (remember) the password, you cannot use the computer.

Bit by Bit Exercises

- 4. ____(Did) you get orange if you mix red and yellow?
- 5. If we put water in a freezer, it _____ (not) turn into steam.

Speaking

Ask and answer about technological devices.

السؤال والحواب عن الأجهزة التكنولوجية:

Question

- What do you think of technology? ما وجهة نظرك في التكنولوجيا؟
- Which device do you think is the most important?

أي جهاز تعتقد أنه الأهم؟

- Why do you think that? لماذا أنت تعتقد ذلك؟

Answer

- I think it is important
- أعتقد أنها مهمة.
- I think phones are the most important.
 - أعتقد التليفونات هي الأكثر أهمية.
- Because we use them for many things!. لأننا نستخدمها في أشياء كثيرة.

General Exercises (a) on Lessons 3& 4





Complete the following dialogue:

Eman and Amira are talking about technology

Eman: What are you reading, Amira?

Eman: An article! 2

Amira: 1

Amira: It is about modern technology.

Eman: Which device do you think is the most important?

Amira:

(a) Introduced the work of the seamented with

Amira: Because we use phones for many things.

Eman: 6 They are important in our life.



Read and complete the text with words from the list:

hackers - characters - mix - guess - post

special @	Long passwords are	e a good idea	of letters, numbers and as they are hard to can guess from your
Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b	, c or d:	
1. The synonym of the	word "nasty" can be		
a. admirable	b. easy	c. hateful	d. public
2. If you accept somet	hing, this means you	to	do this.
a. agree	b. look	c. refuse	d. break
3. Mesk spends hours	on the pl	none.	
a. eating	b. chatting	c. sleeping	d. running
4. He hid	a false identity.		
a. near	b. after	c. before	d. behind
5. If you c	sport, you get better	at it.	
a. practise	b. practises	c. don't pract	ise d. practising
6. If you don't water pl	ants, they	grow well.	
a. didn't	b. doesn't	c. don't	d. aren't
7. If we are late, we us	sually a t	axi	
a. took	b. take	c. takes	d. taking
Complete the sen	tences with correct	form of the wo	rd(s) in brackets:
1. Our plants	(grew) well if i	t rains.	
2(Did)	ice melt if we heat it	?	
3(Wh	ere) happens if you b	oil water?	
4(Wh			
5. What	5. E. 6.000000		
/-			
write a paragraph	of (80-90) words or	1. C. Sant	
et above en la sure	"How to stay so	ife online"	(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)
VC.			



Key Vocabulary



limited-edition (n)	ذات إصدار محدود	scammer (n)	محتال/نصاب
expensive (adj)	غالى الثمن	official seller (n)	بائع معتمد
awesome (adj)	رائع/جميل	scam (v) (n) (med)	يحتال/احتيال
embarrassed (adj)	مُحرَج/مرتبك	م والهندسة (ISEF)	المعرض الدولى للعلوه
talented (adj)	موهوب	lead (led)	يقود/يُرشد
cautious (adj)	حريص	detect (ed)	یکتشف/یضبط
scientific research (n)	بحث علمى		

MICHIGAN CO.	COLUMN TO SERVE	TOU MICHIEL		
TV				
TOV.	0- 1 8	ula	D 40.1/00	
			STATE AND DESCRIPTION	To be

The state of the s			-
gaming forum	منتدى ألعاب	vote (n)	تصويت
game console		Eventually (adv)	أخيرًا/في النهاية
ب الالكترونية	جهاز التحكم في الألعاب	glad (adj)	مسرور/سعید
عض الوقت part-time job	وظیفة بدوام جزئی – لب	ashamed (adj)	خجلان/مستح
savings (n)	مدخرات	gone (adj)	غير موجود/نافذ
profile (n)	ملف تعریف شخصی	the United States	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
positive reviews (n)	تقييمات/أراء إجابية	competition (n)	مسابقة
half price (n)	نصفالثمن	skills (n)	مهارات
shopping online (n)	تسوق عبر الإنترنت	smartlifejacket (n)	سترةالنجاةالذكية
winner (n)	فائز	check (ed)	يتحقق
dirty water (n)	ماء ملوث	explain (ed)	يشرح
reading difficulties (n)	صعوبات القراءة	realize (d)	يدرك
tech = technology (n)	التكنولوجيا	report (ed)	يىد ۋىلىي
young people = youth	الشباب	trust (n) (ed)	يثق/ثقة
account (n)	حساب بنکی	rescue (d)	يُنفذ/يُخلص
a whole week (n)	أسبوع كامل	develop (ed)	يطور
payment (n)	دفئ الثمن - الأجر		x
		2 ~	

Definitions

awesome وأل	something really good or amazing
cautious حریص	someone who does something slowly and carefully
limited-edition ذات إصدار محدود	something of which there are only a few.
مُحرِجً/ مرتبك embarrassed	someone who feels ashamed by something.
expensive مالذ	something that costs a lot of money
scam احتيال	a clever but dishonest way to get money

Expressions & Prepositions

catch his eye	استرعى/لفت انتباه	eye-catching	ملفت للنظر
make the payment		No way!	مستحيل
طلوب	قاموا بسداد المبلغ المح	for sale	للبيع
his money was gone	خسر ماله	lead the way	يقود الطريق
seem right	یبدو علی حق	at the fair	في المعرض
as fast as possible	بأقصى سرعة ممكنة	aged = at the age of	بالغُ من العمر
waitfor	ينتظر	participate in	يشارك في
days go by	مرت الأيام	work in groups	العمل في مجموعات
speak <mark>up</mark>	يرفع صوته	on their own	بمفردهم
save up	يوفر/يدخر	in trouble	فى مأزق/مشكلة
hurt the planet	يضر الكوكب		

(Have) nothing to show for it = (Have) nothing as a result of something.

لم يخرج بفائدة من ذلك (رَجَعَ بِخَفَى حنَين)

ISEF is the abbreviation for International Science and Engineering Fair

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / 0	المضاد Opposite
expensive	بالن	pricey		cheap	رخيص الثمن
awesome	راثج	amazing	final and	boring	مُملُ
embarrassed d	مُحرجً / مرتبك	shy		confident	واثق من نفسه
cautious	حريص	careful		careless	مهمل
glad	عيدس	happy		sad	حزين
		1	8 ~	1	

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ment	يحول الفعل لـ إسم	payment
-er	يحول الفعل لـ إسم	scammer / seller
-ed	يحول الفعل لصفه	talented
-ing	يحول الفعل لـ إسم	reading

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

	CONTROL OF THE PROPERTY OF THE		5 0
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
read	يقرأ	read	read
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
catch	يمسك	caught	caught
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
hurt	يؤلم	hurt	hurt

Language Notes

﴿ ملاحظات لغوية 💉

(1) Nation - National - International

- ولة (أمة) nation
 - Ex. Egypt hosted the African cup of Nations.
- قومی/وطنی National
 - Ex. We should encourage our national team.
- International دولي/بين الدول
 - Ex. I went to Cairo International Airport to meet my uncle.

2) Be + gone

-(gone) هنا صفة بمعنى غير موجود/نافذ/ضائع

- gone: not present any longer
- Ex. All his money was gone.

3) part-time / full-time

- دوام جزئی part-time ،
 - Ex. He has a part-time job.
- دوام کلی full-time
 - Ex. Our company is looking for full-time workers

Check on Language Notes 🗸

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1.____ he could be the first one to message the seller.
 - a. Mau be
- b. Mau is
- c. Maybe
- d. May

- 2. Where is the coffee? It's all___
 - a. go

- b. going
- c. went
- d. gone



Reading



SB Page (52)



SB Page (52)

Scammed

Ali read the post carefully, and then read it again. "No way!" he thought.

ويا ويا الستمع إلى النصوص

He was on his favorite gaming forum⁽¹⁾. Usually, he used it to chat to other gamers, but this morning another type of post caught his eye. In it, someone wanted to sell a

limited-edition (2) games console. Consoles like that were very expensive, and there weren't many of them. Ali wanted it!

Ali checked the time of the post:2 am. It was now 8 am. Maybe he could be the first person to message the seller!

From his part-time⁽³⁾ job in a restaurant, Ali had some savings⁽⁴⁾. He also had LE500 from his grandma for his birthday. He checked his account: yes, he had enough for the console!

The seller had a good profile (5) and lots of positive reviews. So, Ali sent him a message.

This console looks awesome! (6) Why is it half price?

The seller replied quickly. He explained that the console was a present, but he already had one. He sent Ali some photos and videos of it.

Thanks, Ali messaged back. I'll take it!

The seller told Ali where to send the money, and Ali made the payment (7). He felt excited-his friends would be amazed when he told them!

Every day, Ali waited for the console to arrive. After three days, he messaged the seller again.

The console hasn't arrived yet. When did you send it? Another three days went by. No reply. No console. Ali began to worry. He messaged the seller again.

The console still hasn't arrived. Please reply!

Nothing. A whole week went by, and then another, until finally Ali realized it was a scam (8). He felt terrible, and very embarrassed. All his money was gone and he had nothing to show for it (9).

Eventually, (10) Ali knew that he needed to tell someone.

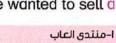
Mom, Dad, I need to talk to you....

Ali felt much better after speaking to his parents. They helped him report the scammer.

The next time Ali went onto the gaming forum, the post was gone, He felt glad about speaking up (11), so the scammer couldn't do the same thing to someone else. He also learned to be cautious (12) when shopping online. It was a difficult lesson, but an important one.

Over the next few months, Ali worked hard at the restaurant and saved up (13) enough money to buy the console from an official seller.

"Remember" he said to his friends when he proudly (14) showed them his new console. "If something doesn't seem right, stop, think, and speak to your parents or another adult for advice. It could be a scam."



٢- ذات الاصدار المحدود ٣- دوام جز ثي

٤- مدخرات ٥- ملف شخصی

٦- رائج

۷<mark>- دفئ الثمن المطلوب</mark> ۸- عملية نصب واحتيال

٩- لم يتحصل على شئ

.ا- في النهاية اا- أناح ما يصدر ه

۱۱- اباح ۱۵ بصدر ۱۲- حریص

۱۳– ادخر ووفر ۱۶– یفخر



Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الأجابة بالأسفل)

- 1.The passage is mainly about_
 - a. Ali got married.

b. Ali got caught.

c. Ali got scammed.

- d. Ali got dressed.
- 2. Find from the passage an expression which means "attracted his attention"
 - a. caught his eye.
- b. spoke up.
- c. was gone.
- b. went by.

3. Infer from the text a word that is a synonym for amazing.

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)

1. He was on his favorite gaming forum.

كان في منتدى الألعاب المفضل لديه.

2. The seller had a good profile.

كان للبائع ملف شخصي جيد.

- 3. Ali felt much better after speaking to his parents.
- شعر على بالارتياح بعد الحديث مع والديه.

3. dwesome

2. a. caught his eye.

1. c. Ali got scammed.

Answers:



SB Page (54)

Solve it with tech

ا- موهوب

۱- شارك في

٣- مسابقة

calc-E

٥- جوائز

٦- سترة النحاه

۷- یکتشف

۸- صعوبات

This month, 24 talented⁽¹⁾ students from Egypt, aged 14-18, participated in⁽²⁾ the International Science and Engineering Fair (ISEF) in the United States. It's a competition⁽³⁾ to develop a science or engineering project that solves a world problem.

Students from 80 countries participated in the event. They have to use their scientific⁽⁴⁾ research skills and work in groups or on their own. Winners can study for one year in the United States. This year, Egyptian students won many prizes⁽⁵⁾ for their inventions! Some of them had great new ideas for technologies that solve problems!







Some project ideas in the competition

- A smart life jacket(6) that can help people in trouble at sea to be rescued as fast as possible.
- A technology that cleans dirty water in a way that doesn't hurt the planet.
- A mobile phone app that can detect⁽⁷⁾ when a student has reading difficulties⁽⁸⁾.
 and help them.

Exercises on Vocabulary

//	5.		
18	ì		ı
	ı		,
1	ð	7	

Read and complete the text with words from the list:

Winners - scientific - groups - prizes - price

	This month 24 talented	d students from Egyp	t participated in th	ne International Science	E
1	and Engineering Fair (ISE	F) in the United State	es. Students from 8	30 countries participate	C
	in the event. They have	to use their 10	researc	h skills and work in 镬	
	or on their o	wn. <u>@</u> ca	n study for one ye	ear in the United States	;
	This year, Egyptian stude	ents won many 🐠 📖			
	/_				
(Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b	, c or d:		
		SB Exerc	cises		
	1. The seller wanted to	sell a limited	games con	sole.	1000
	a. attention	b. fashion	c. edition	d. edit	
	2. The console looks	! It is gre	at.	SB	
	a. awesome	b. terrible	c. horrible	d. awful	
	3. This watch is too	I can't bu	y it.		
	a. tall	b. ship	c. cheap	d. expensive	
	4. Students	$_{\scriptscriptstyle \perp}$ the way! They are	scientists of the fo	uture.	
	a. laid	b. lose	c. lead	d. lean	
	5. "" is an il	legal plan for makin	g money.		
	a. Work	b. Scam	c. Scan	d. Skim	
		❸ Bit by Bit Ex	ercises		
	6. Trust him. He is a	gainally driver.	, majoo d		
	a. careless	b. bad	c. terrible	d. cautious	
	7. Mr. Ahmed felt	when he fell	from the chair.		
	a. embarrassed				
	8. A smart	jacket helps people	in trouble at the s	sea.	
	a. live	b. love	c. lives	d. life	

9.	. When you shop onlir	ne, you have to buy f	rom	sites.
	a. unofficial	b. official	c. unknown	d. bad
10.	This site has many po	ositive		
	a. walls	b. views	c. reviews	d. interviews
11.	They spent all their.	on the ne	ew house.	
	a. safe	b. save	c. thief	d. savings
12.	When you work with	other people this me	ans you work in .	
	a. classes	b. groups	c. world	d. family
13.	The opposite of the w	ord "cautious" is		
	a. well-known	b. careful	c. careless	d. popular
14.	All his money was go	one. The word "gone"	here is a\an	
	a. noun	b. adverb	c. adjective	d. verb
15.	To change the noun '	"dirt" into an adjective	e, we add the suff	ïx
	aer	bment	ced	dy
16				
10.	Ahmed El-Gendy is a	I champi	on.	,
10.	Ahmed El-Gendy is a a. lazy	b. talented	on. c. bad	d. slow
10.			c. bad	d. slow
		b. talented Expressions & pr	c. bad epositions	
	a. lazy	b. talented Expressions & pr	c. bad epositions	
17.I	a. lazy	b. talented Expressions & pr the waiter's eye so we b. hurt	c. bad epositions e could order lund c. grab	ch. d. burn
17.I	a. lazy tried tot a. catch	b. talented Expressions & pr the waiter's eye so we b. hurt	c. bad epositions e could order lund c. grab	ch. d. burn it.
17.I 18. <i>l</i>	a. lazy tried tot a. catch All those years of hard	b. talented Expressions & pr the waiter's eye so we b. hurt d work, and nothing to b. see	c. bad epositions e could order lund c. grab c. show	ch. d. burn it.
17.I 18. <i>I</i> 19.I	a. lazy tried tot a. catch All those years of hard a. hold	b. talented Expressions & pr the waiter's eye so we b. hurt d work, and nothing to b. see	c. bad epositions e could order lunc c. grab c. show	ch. d. burn it. d. play
17.I 18. <i>I</i> 19.I	a. lazy tried tot a. catch All those years of hard a. hold m excited about the r	b. talented Expressions & precise the waiter's eye so we be hurt discounting to be see match. I can't wait and be for	c. bad epositions e could order lunc c. grab c. show c. show c. onoc	ch. d. burn it. d. play d. at
17.I 18. <i>I</i> 19.I 20.S	a. lazy tried tot a. catch All those years of hard a. hold 'm excited about the r a. of	b. talented Expressions & pr the waiter's eye so we b. hurt d work, and nothing to b. see match. I can't wait	c. bad epositions e could order lunc c. grab c. show c. show c. on c. on Everyone likes it.	ch. d. burn it. d. play d. at
17.I 18. <i>I</i> 19.I 20.S	a. lazy tried tot a. catch All those years of hard a. hold m excited about the r a. of She is wearing an eye	b. talented Expressions & precise waiter's eye so we be hurt discounting to be see match. I can't wait a be for dress. I be catching	c. bad epositions e could order lunc c. grab c. show c. show c. on c. c. on c. winning	ch. d. burn it. d. play d. at
17.I 18. <i>A</i> 19.I 20.S	a. lazy tried tot a. catch All those years of hard a. hold m excited about the r a. of She is wearing an eye a. watching This nice shirt is for	b. talented Expressions & pr the waiter's eye so we b. hurt d work, and nothing to b. see match. I can't wait b. for dress. I b. catching	c. bad epositions e could order lunc c. grab c. show c. show c. on c. winning	ch. d. burn it. d. play d. at d. going
17.I 18. <i>A</i> 19.I 20.S	a. lazy tried tot a. catch All those years of hard a. hold m excited about the r a. of She is wearing an eye a. watching This nice shirt is for	b. talented Expressions & pr the waiter's eye so we b. hurt d work, and nothing to b. see match. I can't wait b. for dress. I b. catching I'll buy it. b. buy	c. bad epositions e could order lunc c. grab c. show example wit. c. on a Everyone likes it. c. winning c. sale	ch. d. burn it. d. play d. at d. going d. mail
17.I 18. <i>I</i> 19.I 20.S 21.T	a. lazy tried tot a. catch All those years of hard a. hold m excited about the r a. of She is wearing an eye a. watching his nice shirt is for a. sell	b. talented Expressions & pr the waiter's eye so we b. hurt d work, and nothing to b. see match. I can't wait b. for dress. I b. catching I'll buy it. b. buy	c. bad epositions e could order lunce c. grab c. show c. show c. on c. on c. winning c. sale in.	ch. d. burn it. d. play d. at d. going d. mail

General Exercises (1) on Lessons 5& 6

Complete the following dialogue:

ed yesterddy ou upset?			
present online.			
•			?
t arrive.			
usted site?			
			•
Company Compan		ed <mark>d.</mark> Glad	
<u></u>		377	
		a. keys	
100 PM		d	
		u. saa	
		d learners	
		u. preak	
4	10.000 miles	d ataua	
4.00			
b. old	c. elder	d. aged	
our planet.			
b. hurt	c. help	d. fix	
unique.They are	edition.		
b. bad	c. strong	d. many	
use their	research skills.		
		d. bored	
	present online. t arrive. usted site? t tell your parents. rect answer from a eans when you feel o b. Happy he is the b. loser reading, b. skills ne word "glad" is b. pleased the paym b. make where mothers can o b. stadium have two children b. old our planet. b. hurt unique. They are b. bad use their	present online. It arrive. Justed site? It tell your parents. Trect answer from a, b, c or d: The eans when you feel ashamed by somet b. Happy c. Embarrass he is the c. teacher c. reading, writing, listening of b. skills c. skies he word "glad" is c. skies he word "glad" is b. pleased c. happy the payment on time. D. make c. take where mothers can exchange advice. D. stadium c. forum have two children three are b. old c. elder our planet. D. hurt c. help unique. They are edition.	present online. It arrive. It arrive. It tell your parents. It t

11. Ali's pare	nts helped h	im report the			
a. doctor		b. teacher	c. nurse	d. scammer	
12. Arwa felt	glad after sp	eaking			
a. on		b. up	c. in	d. for	
Punctuo	ate the follo	wing senten	ces:		
1.why does	ali trust the s	seller at first			
2.egyptian s	tudents won	many prizes			
Write an	email of (8	0-90) words	to your friend:		
				نه في آخر الوحدة)	
Ali telling him address is	about a bac	l experience y	you had. Your nam	e is Ahmed and you dress is ali@gmail.a	r email
O N	ew Messo	ige		SAN TRANSPORT	
To	:		Section of the Section of the Section of Section 1981	Сс В	cc
From			-		and a second
Subject	:				
			1.0		
	N.		3.87		
			SAUT.		
Send	<u>A</u> 0	♣ © ©	© considerate	THE REAL PROPERTY.	•
		م النشيال م	LIAN AUTA AUTUALI	ك من خلال الاجابة عن الأنا	
- Why are yo	u upset?	table	ئىنە الاتيە كىنى الىقىرا الىلى الىلى ا	ے من حسل الاجابہ عن الالا	يمحد
- What happe	ened?			in a mot	
- What shoul - Is it a bad t					
as it a bad t	illig i			, استخدام العبارات الآتية:	يمكن
	stay safe onlir			ne your personal	9
- Be careful n	ext time		information	and the same of th	

Review on Unit 4

Key Vocab	ulary		المفردات الرئيسية
ATM (n)	ماكينة الصراف الآلى	scientific research (n)	بحث علمي
green (adj)	صديق للبيئة	search engine (n)	محرك البحث
sustainable (adj)	مستدام	devices (n)	أجهزة
advertisement (n)	إعلان	understanding (n)	فهم
solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	scammer (n)	محتال/نصاب
battery (n)	بطارية	official seller (n)	بائع معتمد
social media (n)	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي	run (v)	<u>ג</u> בير
fitness (n)	اللياقة البدنية	tap (ped)	ينقر
hacker (n) ومات	هاكر (متسلل يختلس المعلر	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الالكتروني	insert (ed)	يُدخل – يُدرج
aim (n)	هدف/غاية	press (ed)	يضغط على
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	click (ed)	يضغط على زرار
platform (n)	منصة (للتواصل الاجتماعي)	hide behind (v)	يختبئ خلف
difference (n)	فرق/اختلاف	post (n/v.ed)	ينشر/منشور
fact (n)	حقيقة	accept (ed)	يوافق
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	cool (ed)	يبرد
nasty (adj)	قبیح/بغیض	prove (d)	يبرهن على/يثبت
limited-edition (n)	ذات إصدار محدود	solve (d)	يحل
expensive (adj)	غالى الثمن	freeze (v)	يُجمَد
awesome (adj)	رائغ/جميل		يحتال/احتيال
embarrassed (adj)	مُحرَج/مرتبك	THE CONTRACT OF THE CONTRACT O	المعرض الدولى للعلوه
talented (adj)	موهوب	lead (led)	يقود/يُرشد
cautious (adj)	حریص	detect (ed)	یکتشف/یضبط

Language

قواعد لغوية

الأمر

The imperative

Affirmative

امر مثبت

باقى الجملة + Inf

Ex. Show me how to use it!

Ex. Tap the app to open it.

Negative

امر منفي

باقي الجملة + Don't + inf

Ex. Don't stop pressing.

Ex. Don't stay up late.

● لتكوين صيغة الأمر نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل في الأمر المثبت. ونبدأ بـ (Never/Don't) في الأمر المنفى + مصدر الفعل

الحالة الشرطية الصفرية The Zero Conditional

✔ تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق العلمية والأشياء الصحيجة دائمًا والعادات المتكررة:

Ex. If / when you boil water, it changes into steam.

Ex. If I feel thirsty, I always drink water.

التكوين Form

 present simple

 If / when
 present simple

 مضارع بسیط

✔ تستخدم جملة جواب الشرط لتكوين سؤال:

Ex. If we mix red and yellow, what do we get?

✔ يمكن استخدام الحالة الصفرية في إعطاء الأوامر (في حالة عدم وجود فاعل في جملة جواب الشرط)

Ex. If something doesn't seem right, think and speak to your parents.

✔ لاحظ استخدام وعدم استخدام الفاصلة السفلية بين الجملتين:

Ex. If you add 2 and 2(,) you get 4.

Ex. You get 4 if you add 2 and 2.

اذا بدأنا الجملة الشرطة (If/When) نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين ﴿

Speaking



Ask and answer about technological devices.

• السؤال والجواب عن الأجهزة التكنولوجية:

Question

- What do you think of technology? ما وجهة نظرك في التكنولوجيا؟
- Which device do you think is the most important?

أى جِمَازِ تَعْتَقُدُ أَنَّهُ الْأَهُمَ؟

- Why do you think that?

لماذا أنت تعتقد ذلك؟

Answer

- I think it is important
- أعتقد أنها مهمة.
- I think phones are the most important.

أعتقد التليفونات هي الأكثر أهمية.

- Because we use them for many things!. لأننا نستخدمها في أشياء كثيرة.

ohs& Emai

. فقرات انشائية و رسائل بريد الكثروني عن موضوعات وردت بالعجدة

Lessons 1&2

1. Inventions for the future.

Do you know about the future? Our world has many problems. We need new ways to help us take care of our planet and fix some of the problems it faces. Some search engines give the money they get to help tree-planting projects around the world. Scientists are developing batteries that work using material from plants.

General Exercises 1&2

2. Future projects.

When we go online, we see online advertisements. Some search engines give the money they get from advertisements to help tree-planting projects around the world. The world's oceans are full of plastic which is very bad for life in the ocean. Oceans clean-up projects collect rubbish in the water, then ships take it back to land for recucling. Those are new projects which help our planet.

Lessons 3&4

3. How to stay safe online

The internet is very important. We use it every day. It is very useful. When you are online, you should follow some rules to stay safe. Keep your password secret. Don't tell anyone about it. Don't make friends with people you don't know. Don't tell people your personal information like your telephone number or your address. Don't send photos to people you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher.

Lessons 5&6

4. A bad experience online.

To

: ali@gmail.com

: ahmed@yahoo.com

Subject: A bad experience online

Dear Ali.

How are you and your family? I hope you the best. I want to talk to you about a bad experience online. An unknown person sent me a friend request, I accepted it because of his good profile. We started to chat for a while. We spent much time talking about our lives. But he asked for some personal information so I was scared about him. I realized it was a scam. Please, make sure before you add anyone. and two, you u

Love you! Ahmed

"Talented Egyptian Students"

This month, 24 talented students from Egypt, aged 14-18, joined the ISEF in America. It's a competition to develop a science or engineering project that solves a world problem. Students from 80 countries participated in the event. They have to use their scientific research skills. Winners can study for one year in America. Egyptian students won many prizes for their inventions!

Al Azhar Exercises

A: Listening

10	
166	2
	1
1	-

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

			نص الاستماع اذر الكتاب
1.Today is			
a. Sunday	b. Friday	c. Monday	d. Tuesday
2.My is watchi			and the state of t
a. father	b. mother	c. sister	d. brother
	B: Language	Functions	
Complete the follow	owing dialogue:		
Abdo bought a new i			
Omar : Congratulation		ile.	
Abdo : 0	1573		
Omar : How much is	it?		***************************************
		80	
Omar : 69			?
Abdo : I bought it las	t week.		
Omar : Have a great	day!		
Choose the correct	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. The hacker can hide	behind ar	iame.	
a. false	b. real	c. right	d. correct
2.When you cross the r			
a. nice	b. careless		d. bad
3. We many ;	V7014		
a. play	b. nose	c. hand	d. face
4. Don't your i		278	
a. life	b. leave	c. left	d. leaving
5 you add tw			- y
a. What	b. When	c. Where	d. Why

C: Reading Comprehension



Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Computers are probably the most important modern invention. <u>They</u> are machines which follow programs that help store and control electronic information. A computer



can do difficult sums very quickly. Computers are important for three main reasons. They are flexible, accurate and can store a lot of information in their memory. Computers are now used in banks, factories and at home. The internet allows people to communicate with anyone around the world in seconds. Most books are now made with the help of computers. Even doctors use computers to help them examine their patients. So, we thank the inventor of this lovely machine.

Answer the rottow Why are computers			
2. Where can compute	ers be used?		
3. Do you think compu	iters are necessary ii	n learning? Why	/ Why not?
B. Choose the correc			-
4. The underlined word	to the provider of the control of th		
a. telephones	b. machines	c. computers	d. instructions
5.To thank someone r	(1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1)		
a. pleased	b. displeased	c. ungrateful	d. angry
Reorder the follo	wing words to make	e meaningful se	ntences:
1.can - do - you - at - !	What - an EcoATM?		
2.skip - your - Don't -	lessons		
3. are - think - importa	nt - <u>I</u> - phones.		
4.worked - the - at - 🛕	<u>li</u> - restaurant - hard.		
.	D: Wr	iting	4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4
Write a paragrapi	h of FIVE (5) senten	ces on:	(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)
	"Future Inve	entions"	,
		a de ar cleans	
		- work?	



A: Listening



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

		ص الاستماع آخر الكتاب
b. A nurse	c. A scientist	d. A teacher
b. Easy	c. Boring	d. ugly
es she work in? _		
	b. Men's ward	
	d. Girls' ward	
forward to going I	home?	
b. To read	c. To eat	d. To have a rest
B: Languag	ge Functions	
wing dialogue:		
about his fathe	r's job	
ther's job, Adham	?	
orep school.		
2 (1)		?
2 (1)		
8 6/2 1 2		
glish to students. s work?		
glish to students. s work?		?
	b. A nurse b. Easy es she work in? forward to going b. To read B: Languag wing dialogue: a about his fathe ther's job, Adham	b. A nurse c. A scientist b. Easy c. Boring es she work in? b. Men's ward d. Girls' ward forward to going home? b. To read c. To eat B: Language Functions wing dialogue: a about his father's job ther's job, Adham?



Read and complete the text with words from the list:

chat - profile - person - request - personal

his good @	unknown person sent me	for (a while, but he asked me
(4)	C: Reading C	Comprehension	
Read the fo	llowing, then answer th	e questions:	
under water to strain are dangerous. In the gases there. Also, there are used to clean floor	important role in our life udy the sea. <u>Others</u> are 2012, scientists sent a role e <u>personal</u> robots which ars and cut the grass in po	sent inside volcand bobot to another plant are used to do arks and gardens.	noes to study places that anet to study the soil and jobs at home. They are In addition, some robots
	an entertain children and		
	ollowing questions:		
1. What is the m	nain idea of the passage?		
3. Summarize th	that robots can help in ho	sentence.	
B. Choose the o	correct answer from a, b of the word "personal" i	o, c or d:	
a. private	b. popular ed word " <u>others</u> " refers to	c. nice	d. wise
a. jobs6. Robots have	b. planets friendly	c. robots	d. parks
a. faces	b. eyes	c. hands	d. noses
	D: Vocabular	y and Structure	
Choose the	e correct answer from a	, b, c or d:	
1. You first need	I to install the app on you	r	
a. advice	b. advise	c. vice	d. device

2. Mesk should le	arn to use her time more			
a. carelessly	b. efficiently	c. badly	d. warmly	
3. Finally, Ali	it was a scam	==== *		
a. realized	b. slept	c. studied	d. worked	
4.I wear	to listen to music.			
a. phones	b. headphones	c. radios	d. helmets	
5. The project	to find jobs fo	or many people.		
d. cools	b. proves	c. aims	d. loses	
6. What	if you click on this p	icture?		
a. happened	b. happen	c. happens	d. happening	
7. If you	the button, it takes	a photo.		
	b. not press		d. pressed	
8 t	he camera and take the p	photo		
a. Points	b. Pointed	c. Point	d. Pointing	
	fyou som			
	b. adds		d. add	
	a lot, she learns mo			
a. reads	b. read	c. reading	d. to read	
6 Complete the s	entences with the correc	t form of the wo	ord(s) in brackets:	
1. The baby is sle	eping!(Be	en) quiet!		
	(spoke) to me like			
	nember the password, you	/ART-1 14	(can) use the phone.	
	(cool) to (0) Celsi			
	E Writi	ing		
Write a paragr	aph of (80-90) words on	10400		
	"Talented Egyptia	n Students"	(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)	
			N (%)	
FIRST CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRA				
			-	
		mg		
	•••••••••			



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

An article about how climate change is affecting people; An article about water scarcity; Helping the Earth: a poem

Writing:

A blog post about becoming more ecofriendly

Listening:

Understand a talk about geology Speaking:

Talk about the effects of climate change; Making comparisons

Language:

Comparatives and superlatives; Articles





المفردات الرئيسية

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

drought (n)	جفاف	effect (n)	ناثير
wildfire (n)	حراثق الغابات	technologies (n)	تقنيات
flood (n)	فيضان	fever (n)	عمي
water scarcity (n)	ندرة المياة	air conditioning (n)	تكييف الهواء
heatstroke (n)	<u>ضرية شمس</u>	impact (n)	تأثير
storm (n)	عاصفة	suffer (ed)	يعاني
hygiene (n)	النظافة الشخصية	affect (ed)	يۇثر
transportation (n)	وسائل النقل والمواصلات	miss (ed)	يفتقد
worrying (adj)	مقلق/محير	produce (d)	ينتج
climate change (n)	التغير المناخي		

Vocabulary			المفردات الاضافية ——————
enough (adj)	کاف	Earth's surface (n)	سطح الكرة الارضية
village (n)	قرية	resources (n)	مصادر
weather (n)	الطقس	reasons (n)	أسباب
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	crops (n)	محاصيل
degree (n)	درجة	lack (n)	نقص
leaves (n)	اوراق الاشجار	bacteria (n)	بكتيريا
fortunately (adv)		adults (n)	بالغون
illness (n)	مرض	simple (adj)	بسيط
the world (n)	مالحا	°C = degree Celsius (n	درجة مئوية

Unit 5 In Nature

Expressions & Prepositions

tooto	جدا لدرجة الا	one of the most	واحدة من الأكثر
as well	أيضًا	reason for	سبب
the last time	اخر مرة	on average	فىالمتوسط
for too long	لمدة طويلة	in different ways	بطرق مختلفة
normal for us	معتاد بالنسبة لنا	for example,	على سبيل المثال
because of	بسبب	pay for	يدفئ لـ
on a farm	في المزرعة	lack of	نقص فی
stay in bed	يمكث بالسرير	plenty of	وفرة من

Definitions

drought جفاف	when there is no rain for a long time
فيضان flood	when there's too much rain
عواصف storms	bad weather, with wind, rain, thunder and lightning
climate change التغير المناخى	changes in the weather over time
water scarcity مندرة المياه	where there isn't enough clean, fresh water for everyone

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

الكلمة Word		المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite	
worried	قلق	anxious	calm/relaxed	ھادئ
safe	امن	secure / protected	dangerous	خطير
clean	نظیف	clear / pure / fresh	dirty	قذر
ill	مريض	sick	well	بصحة جيدة
simple	بسيط	easy	difficult	بدص
important	هام	significant	unimportant	غير هام
dry	جاف	dehydrated	wet	مبتل

بادثات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-y	تحول الاسم الى صفة	healthy
-ness	تحول الصفة الى الاسم	illness
-ous	تحول الاسم الى صفة	dangerous

Conjugations of	Irregular Verbs	مة	تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظ
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
burn	يحرق/يحترق	burned/ burnt	burned/ burnt
have/has	يمتلك	had	had
fight	يقاتل/يقاوم	fought	fought
give	يعطى	gave	given
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
grow	ینمو/یزرع	grew	grown
pay	يدفع	paid	paid

Language Notes

` مُلاحظات لغُوية `

1 because / because of + noun (v + ing)

- جملة كاملة + لأن because •
- Ex. I don't go out today because the weather was bad.
- because of الاسم + بسب (v + ing)
- Ex. I can't go out today because of the bad weather.

2) too + adj + to + inf جدّالدرجة الا

Ex. The tea is too hot to drink.

الشاى ساخن لدرجة ألا أستطيع شربه.

3) affect / effect

- پۇثر على (بدون حرف جر) + (affect (v
- تاثیر effect (n) تاثیر
- Ex. Bad weather affects us badly.
- Ex. Bad weather had bad effects on us.

Check on Language Notes 🗸

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. My cousin had a heatstroke _____ the heat of the sun.
 - a. because
- b. because of
- c. but
- d. and
- 2. I can't drink this tea. It's _____ hot to drink.
 - a. two

a. health

- b. too
- c. toe
- d. to

- 3. Smoking has a bad _____ on us.
 - b. effect
- c. dessert
- d. flood



Reading



SB Page (57)

Lesson 1: Climate change

استمع إلى النصوص



How climate change is affecting me

1. Hi, I'm Leonie. I live in a village in Andalusia in Spain. Hot weather in summer is normal for us, but this summer the highest temperature⁽¹⁾ was 46 °C. That's about five degrees warmer than it normally⁽²⁾ is. My family is having a lot of problems because of⁽³⁾ the hot weather here.



2. My family lives on a farm. Because of the hot weather, there's a drought⁽⁴⁾ in the south of Spain right now. The tomato plants on our farm are getting smaller and some of their leaves are brown. Because of the drought, we can't give the plants as much water as they need. My family therefore don't have enough tomatoes to sell. My dad is looking for a second⁽⁵⁾ job so he can earn⁽⁶⁾ more money.



3. We're also having some problems⁽⁷⁾ with our health. My mom had heatstroke⁽⁸⁾ last week and she stayed in bed for three days because, she was too ill to get up. She had a fever⁽⁹⁾ and she was really tired all the time. We were very worried about her, but, fortunately, she's feeling better now. Some of my friends had heatstroke, too. I'm trying to stay inside as much as possible, so I don't get heatstroke as well.



4. The worst⁽¹⁰⁾ thing about this summer for me was that our school closed for a week. The teachers said it was dangerous for us to travel to school because it was so hot. It was also too hot for us to be at school because we don't have air conditioning⁽¹¹⁾ there. I missed my friends when we couldn't go to school. I hope that never happens again!



ا. درجة حرارة ۲. بشكل طبيعى

> ۳. بسبب ٤. جفاف

> > ه. اخری

٦. يکسب

۷. مشاکل ۸. ضربة شمس

9. حمى

ا. أسوأ

اا. تكييف الهواء

Reading Skill

مهارة الكتابة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

- 1. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
- 2. Where's the drought right now?
- 3. What's the worst thing about this summer?

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة (حمل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)

- 1. Water scarcity is one of the most worrying problems.
- ندرة المياه واحدة من أكثر المشاكل المقلقة.
- 2. One of the reasons for water scarcity is climate change.
- أحد أسباب ندرة المياه هو التغيير المناخي.

3. Water scarcity affects people in different ways.

تؤثر ندرة المياه عل<mark>ي الناس ب</mark>طرق مختلفة.

3. It was that Leonie's school closed for a week.

2. In the south of Spain.

1. Leonie had bad weather and the temperature was too hot.

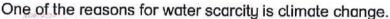
Answers:



SB Page (58)

Thirsty planet

Water scarcity⁽¹⁾ is one of the most worrying⁽²⁾ problems facing the world today. Although water covers more than 70% of Earth's surface, two billion people don't have enough⁽³⁾ fresh, clean water for drinking, washing, cooking, and growing food. Even in countries where there are good water resources⁽⁴⁾, the water cannot always reach the people who need it.



On average⁽⁵⁾, temperatures are higher than they were in the past. In some places, there is also less rain, so there isn't as much water in lakes and rivers.

Water scarcity affects people in different ways. Farmers, for example, can't grow as many crops as they used to. Without crops to sell, they can't earn enough money to pay for clean water. A lack of water can also mean that people have to walk a long way to find it, which can have a negative (6) effect on their health. The biggest impact can be on children, who have less time to spend in school.

ا. ندرةالمياه

٦. مقلق

۳. کاف

ع. مصادر

ه. متوسط

٦. سلبي

۷. خطیر

۸. مرض

٩. بسيط

ا. اوفرة من

Another problem is that people often can't find clean, safe water. The dangerous of metals and bacteria in dirty water can make them very ill. This can be more dangerous for children than for adults because their bodies are less able to fight the illnesses of children than for adults because their bodies are less able to fight the illnesses. Solving the problem of water scarcity is not simple. However, there are lots of things that can help such as finding new water sources and developing new technologies to produce and clean water. It is also important that people who live in countries with plenty of of the countries of that no action is taken, and more people suffer.

Exercises on Vocabulary



Complete the following dialogue:

Khalid a	nd Anas are	talking about wate	r scarcity.	
Khalid	: Did you re	ad about water scar	city?	
Anas	: 10			
Khalid	: What does	it mean?		
Anas	: @			
Khalid	: 3			
Anas	: It happens	because of the drou	ıght.	
Khalid	: 🐠			
Anas	: We should	save water all over	the world.	
Khalid	: 6			
(2) Choos	se the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:	
		Vocabulary & SI		
4 \\\	l			
		ugh water in an area		
a. flood		b. drought		
a. cold	walk in the st	un for a long time, I b. flu	c. heatstroke	
ALLEY VIRTUES IN	rom the river i	s coming into our ho		1996 FA 197
d. scar		b. flood		
	<u> </u>	astarte		
g, tour	9,	b. wildfire		
	here's strong	wind .It's a		
	1.50	b. storm		d. lake
		h water to drink righ		
a. flood		b. waterfall	c. water scarcit	y <mark>d</mark> . waterwheel
7. My dad	is ill today, so	he is staying in		
a. chair		b. bed	c. computer	d. mobile
		Bit by Bit Ex	ercises	
8. Water o	overs more th	an 70% of Earth's _		
a. face		b. surface	c. hand	d. water
9. One of	the reasons fo	r water scarcity is	chang	e
a. cloud	I	b. climate	c. people	d. water
10. The far	mers in our vi	lage didn't	_ much money th	is season.
a. play		b. earn	c. burn	d. eat

11	. The dangerous m				er can mak	e the children	
	a. well	1000	good	2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2			
12	. Solving the proble						
	a. simple					d. happy	
13.	. I have	_ of mo	ney, so I co	an buy what	I need.		
	a. piece	b.	olenty	c. pai	rt	d. drop	
14.	."" is	when th	ere is too m	nuch rain.			
	a. Drought	b.	Flood	c. Sto	orm	d. Wildfire	
15.	Water scarcity has	s a neg	ative	on us			
	a. affect					d. flood	
16.	Dirty water can gi						
	a. droughts				urces	d. storms	
		Ex	pression a	nd Preposi	tions		
17.	I don't have enoug	gh mone	ey to pay	th	ne mobile.		
	a. of	b. f	or	c. in		d. to	
18.	It'sfo	r us to f	eel worried	before exar	ns.		
	a. wet	b. r	ormal	c. dry		d. clean	
19.	The bad weather I	nas a ba	d effect	mc	any people		
	a. in	b. c		c. on			
20.	On, te	emperat					
	a. over		verage				
	, _00	9			7		
			Languo	ige	عد لغوية	صر قوا:	
				81			
	Comparative ar	nd Sup	erlative A	djectives	ة والتفضيل	صفات المقارن)
			٠.6	طويلة المقط	يرة المقطع و	يم الصفات الى قص	● تنقیر
				7.5	2 2	1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1	
		12.4	4.		المصتاره:) أمثلة الصفات ا	Դଦ 🚳
	noisy	صاخب	green	صديق للبيئة	clean	نظيف	
	high	, II c	dry	is stuging in	hot		
		ia Mg	1000		d Polymbra	حار	1
					لطويلة 🌘	ا أمثلة الصفات ا	🕝 مر
	dangerous	خطير	expensive	غالى الثمن	attractive	جذاب Tranevo	
	comfortable	مريح	difficult	صعب سودان	different	مختلف عمد	
		امشخصا	نقىيى شائىي	ılö all Come	arativo 51	نخدم صيغة المقار	
	.0					Electric and entire	
		جموعه.	ل بین واحد ومد	Supeللتفضيا	يل erlative	نخدم صيغة التفض	●نسن



◎ تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلى:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "high"	er + than "higher than"	the + صفة + est "the highest"
	Ex. On average the temperatures are higher than they were in the past.	Ex. Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
long adjective "dangerous"	أقل أكثر more / less + صفة + than	الأقل الأكثر the most / the least + صفة
	Ex. Lions are more dangerous than dogs.	Ex. Lions are the most dangerous animals in the zoo.



- من الممكن أن نستغنى عن than عند المقارنة وتفهم من المعنى:

Ex. Mona is clever but Habiba is cleverer (than her).

		ظ کما هی:	نتظمة تحف	توجد بعض الصفات غير الم
many	کثیر (اسم یعد)	more than		the most
few	قليل (اسم يعد)	fewer than	-	the fewest
much	کثیر (اسم یعد)	more than	-	the most
little	قليل (اسم يعد)	less than		the least
good	<u></u>	better than	→	the best
bad	دسی	worse than		the worst
far	<u></u>	farther / further than		the farthest / furthest

- Ex. The weather today is worse than it was yesterday.
- Ex. Water covers more than 70% of the surface of the earth.

● للتعبير عن تساوى شخصين/شيئين في نَفْسَ الصفة نستخدم:

Ex. Farmer's can't grow as many crops as they used to.

Ex. Mong makes money as much as Amal does. Ex. Droughts are as serious as floods. ● للتعبير عن عدم تساوى شخصين/شيئين في نفس الصفة نستخدم اسم + as + صفة + not as/so + صفة + as + اسم Ex. Australia is not as hot as Africa. ● عند التعبير عن (عدم) التساوى بين فعلين نستخدم: فعل + فعل + as + حال + as/so (not) + فعل Ex. She doesn't speak English as carefully as she writes it. ملاحظات: تكوين صفات المقارنة / التفضيل large -> larger close -> closer • يضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ 🧝 • إذا انتهت الصفة بـ حرف ساكن + لا تحول يا إلى أنضيف er و est و ا dry → drier than → the driest / busy → busier than → the busiest) • إذا انتهت الصفة بحر ف ساكن يسبقه حر ف متجرك يضاعف الحر ف الأخير : hot → hotter than → the hottest thin >> thinner than >> the thinnest Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. This summer, the _____ temperature was 46°c. c. more high d. as high a. high b. highest The tomato plants on our farm were getting _____ than in the past. a. small b. smallest c. smaller d. more small 3. My sister was ill, but she's feeling ____ now. b. better d. more bad a. bad c. worst 4. The _____ thing about this summer for me was that our school closed. b. more bad d. most bad c. worst d. worse 5. Temperature is _____ than they were in the past. b. more high d. higher a. high c. highest 6. The _____ impact of high temperature can be on children. a. big b. biggest c. bigger d. more big

adults.	arty water can be	dangerous	for children than for	
a. most	b. the more	c. more	d. manu	
	the desert is			
	b. drier			
	re less able to fight the			
	b. the			
	is one of the			
	b. most			
		Exercises	u. much	
11. That's	boy in our class.			
	b. taller	c. the taller	d more taller	
12. The red T-shirt	is theexpe	ensive one.	d. more taller	
a. as		c. least	d. as little	
13. I think my villag	ge is thepl			
	b. best		d. bad	
	weryour lo			
a. that	b. then	c. the	d. than	
	the building			
a. tall	b. taller	c. tallest	d. as tall	
to. I think the elepi	nant is the	animal in the worl	d.	
a. heavy	b. heaviest	c. heavier	d. as heavy	13
	e for the dr			
	b. better	c. best	d. as good	
	than the Earth.			
	b. bigger	c. as big	•	
	is theprol	olem we face toda	y.	
a. dangerous	~	b. more dange	erous	
c. most dangero		d. dangerous		
	nework was the	וp ti bib e Wing	iickly.	
a. easy	b. easiest	c. easier	d. as easy	
Complete the	sentences with the cor	rect form of the w	vord(s) in brackets	:
1. Climate change	is the(mor	re) dangerous prol	blem.	
	(big) lake ir			
	(newest) than n			
		6504		

	LESSOIIS I CE
4. Mount Everest is the (hig	h) mountain in the world.
5. Well done, your homework is	(good) than my homework.
6. I think Arabic is (most) diff	icult language.
7. August is (hot) than Nover	
ASSTRUCTURE	
Spe	eaking
Talking about climate change:	• السؤال والاجابة عن التغير المناخي:
Question	Answer
- What are the effects of climate	- Water scarcity is one of the
change?	effects.
ما هي تأثيرات التغير المناخي؟	ندرة المياه هي احدى هذه التأثيرات
- How does water scarcity affect	- They don't have enough water to
people? كيف يؤثر نقص المياه علي الناس؟	drink. لیس لدیهم ماء کافی للشرب،
- What's the greatest impact for	- The biggest impact can be on
water scarcity?	children, it make them ill.
ما هو <mark>أكبر تأثير لنقص المياه؟</mark>	أكبر تأثير يكون علي الأطفال ويجعلهم مرضي
	Lead? Head so flot
Ceneral Exercise	on Lessons 1& 2
' A	
Complete the following dialogue:	
Ahmed and Mohamed are talking abou	_
Ahmed : Hi Mohamed! What's the wed	207
Mohamed: It's too hot, it's 44 degrees.	a. mg/2
The state of the s	?
Mohamed: Yes, high temperature can gi Ahmed: What should I do to protect n	6
Application of the Control of the Co	nyseu :
Ahmed : You are right. Walking in the	hot weather is very had
	?
	igh temperature can make them ill?
	1
	problem?

Mohamed: 69-----





Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

earn - affects - higher - grow - children

Climate change is on	e of the reasons for	water scarcity. O	n average, temperatures
			here is also less rain, so
			people in different ways.
			used to. Without crops to
sell, they can't 🐠	enough money to	pay for clean wat	er.
Choose the corre	ct answer from a, l	o, c or d:	
1. A " " is w	hen there's too muc	h rain in an area.	
a. drought	b. flood	c. storm	d. wildfire
2. My village is	than the city.		
a. quiet	b. as quiet	c. quieter	d. the quietest
3. It's very hot in our h	ouse and we don't h	naveto	cool it.
a. cooker		b. TV	
c. air conditioning		d. the kettle	
4. Amr is tal	l as Adel. They are	the same height.	
a. more	b. as	c. most	d. the most
5. Health is	important than mon	ey.	
a. most	b. least	c. more	d. little
6. My brother goes to I	his work by bus. He	uses public	
 a. transportation 	b. rule	c. effect	d. storm
Complete the sent	tences with correct	form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
1. Math is the	(exciting) subject	at school.	
2. Yesterday was hott	er(then) t	oday.	
3. I think tennis is the	(less) inte	eresting sport.	
4. My grandpa is	(old) than my	grandma.	
Punctuate the follo	owing sentences:	i Bopali	
-11-24			#10 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
I m ahmed. I live in l	uxor		





المفردات الرئيسية

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

bird feeder (n)	وعاء لإطعام الطيور	geology (n)	علم الجولوجيا
electronic devices (n)	أجهزة الكترونية	hanging basket (n)	صیص زرع (معلق)
minerals (n)	معادن	features (n)	خصائص
eco-friendly (n)	صديق للبيئة	rocks (n)	صخور
air conditioning (n)	تكييف الهواء	resources	موارد/مصادر
layers (n)	طبقات	consume (d)	يستهلك
marble (n)	حجر الرخام	recycle (d)	یعید تصنیع
sandstone (n)	حجر رملي	melt (ed)	ينصهر
basalt (n)	حجر البازلت	form (ed)	يتكون – يشكل
audience (n)	جمهور		. * 0.

Vocabular	y 📴		المفردات الاضافية
tips (n)	-DEGGE BY	Ireland (n)	إيرلندا
electricity (n)	الكهرباء	alarm (n)	منبه/انذار
tablet (n)	کمبیوتر لوحی	results (n)	نتائج
power (n)	طاقة	fuel (n)	وقود
machine (n)	آلة	ideal (adj)	مثالي
games console (n)	وحدة التحكم للألعاب	bottom (n)	اسفل
Earth's crust (n)	القشرة الأرضية	swap (ped)	يتبادل
bath (n)	حمام – استجمام	waste (d)	يهدر
liquid (n)	سائل	generate (d)	يولد (طاقة)
recycling bin (n)	سلة مهملات	design (ed)	يصمم
the Sphinx (n)	أبو الهول	press (ed)	يضغط
Ancient Greece (n)	اليونان القديمة	cool (ed)	ייע ב
The Giant's Causewo	ay (n) ممر العمالقة في (إيرلند	reuse (d)	تعتد اسيجداف



Definitions

bird feeder	وعاء طعام للطيور	a garden container of food for bird		
air conditioning	نظام تكييف الهواء	a machine to cool your home		
geology	جولوجيا	the study of rocks		
consume	يستهلك	to use something		
save energy	يوفر طاقة	not waste electricity or fuel		
on stand-by	في وضعَ التشغيل	not switched on but using power		
hanging basket اصيص زرع معلق (a container for plants		

Expressions & Prepositions

a five-minute shower		in use	قيد الاستخدام
	حمام لمدة خمس دقائق	on stand - by	في وضعَ التشغيل
waste electricity	يهدر الكهرباء	at the bottom	في القاع
save water	يوفر الماء	depend on	يلد عمتدي
it's possible to	من الممكن	a container for	وعاء ل
set the alarm	يضبط المنبه	melt into	ينصهرا
make a difference to	يحدث فارق لـ	agree on	يوافق علي
have a shower	يأخذ دش/يستحم	layers of	طبقات من
as a result of	نتيجة لـ	the ideal time for	التوقيت المثالي لـ

الكلمات وعكسها Synonyms & Antonyms المُلاء وعكسها Antonyms المُلاء ال

		-g.iongin Galpon	Antongin i Opposite amoi	
great	رائع	wonderful	terrible	سیۂ جدا
agree	يوافق	accept	disagree	يرفض
save	يوفر	keep	waste	يُهدر
		0 ~		

الدَّالَ ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
re-	القيام بالفعل مرة اخري	reuse
-er	تحول الفعل الى اسم	feeder / container
-ity	تكوين الاسم من الصفة	electricity
-ion	تكوين الاسم من الفعل	action

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	, ,	تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة		
Present	Past simple	Past Participle		
اتي come	came	come		
find 22	found	found		
break کسر	broke	broken		
set ضبط	set	set		
grow grow	grew	grown		

Language Notes



made of / made from

- made of مصنوع من (المادة الخام واضحة لا تتغير)
- Ex. The chair is made of wood.

· made from

مصنوع من (المادة الخام تتغير او تكون غير واضحة)

Ex. The cake is made from flour, eggs, and butter.

2) layer / liar

- طيقة (ayer (n)
- Ex. The Earth's surface is made up of layers of rocks.
- ادب (n) افاد
- Ex. I don't trust him. He is a ligr.

Check on Language Notes 🗸

Choose the o	correct answer from a, b	o, c or d:		
1. The window is	s made de d	Simonia	Laun	
a. from	b. of	c. at	d. with	100.4
2. The cookies ar	e made flour an	d butter.		5)07-17
a. in	b. of	c. from	d. to	40.734



Reading



SB Page (60)

Tips to be more eco-friendly in the home





Air conditioning⁽¹⁾, hot water, and electronic devices⁽²⁾ in our homes all use a lot of electricity.

Making electricity uses a lot of the planet's resources⁽³⁾, which can make climate change worse.

Let's help our planet - let's save energy⁽⁴⁾ at home!



a. Remember to always switch off lights, TVs, computers, games consoles (6), tablets, and all of your electronic devices when they aren't in use. Don't leave them on stand-by (6) as this still consumes a lot of energy and don't use more than one device at the same time!



- b. There are about 150 to 200 liters of water in an average⁽⁷⁾ bath, but there's only between 30 and 80 liters in a five-minute shower. Showers are a great way to save water⁽⁸⁾ and energy. But don't spend a long time in the shower: set the alarm⁽⁹⁾ on your phone for five minutes and then stop!
- c. There are lots of things in our trash that we can recycle or even reuse at home. Plastic bottles are a good example. Reuse them to make other things, for example a bird feeder, or a hanging basket for your plants.

- ا. تكييف الهواء
 - ۲. أجهزة الكترونية
 - ۳. مصادر
- ٤. يوفر الطاقة
- ه. أجهزة التحكم بالألعاب
- ٦. وضع التشغيل
- ۷. في المتوسط
- ٨. توفير المياه
 - ٩. منيه



SB Page (62)

Types of rocks

Teacher:

Good morning class. Today we're looking at different types of rocks for module 3 on the structure(1) of the Earth. Tarek, please show the first slide. That's it, thank you. The Earth's surface(2) is, as you can see, made up of layers(3) of rocks. Rocks are solids⁽⁴⁾ which are made of minerals. Rocks can be grouped⁽⁵⁾ into three types depending on which minerals (6) they contain and how they were formed.

Teacher:

The three types of rock we're looking at today are sandstone⁽⁷⁾, basalt⁽⁸⁾, and marble. Sandstone is usually found near the Earth's surface. It's formed from the broken parts of other rocks and material when they press⁽⁹⁾ together. The youngest layers of sandstone are at the top. The oldest layers are at the bottom. The Ancient Egyptians used sandstone to build things, like the Sphinx at Giza. Now, if rock becomes very, very hot, it melts(10) into liquid. Basalt is a type of rock that forms when liquid rock cools(11) again

ا. ترکس ٦. سطح الأرض ٣. طبقات ٤. أشياء صلية ٥. تجمع فيمجموعات ٦. معادن ۷. حجر رملی ٨. حجر البازلت 9. يضغط ا. پذوب اا. يبرد

and becomes solid. We find these rocks in the bottom layers of the Earth's surface. It can make some amazing natural shapes.

Here's an example. This is the Giant's Causeway in Ireland. Finally, let's look at marble. Marble is also found in the bottom layers of the Earth's surface. It forms when other types of rock get very hot and the minerals in them change form. Marble is a very strong type of rock. It is often used to make statues, like this one here from Ancient Greece.

Exercises on Vocabulary



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary & SB Exercises

- electricity uses a lot of the planet's resources. a. Doing b. Making d. Eating c. Putting
- This historic building is made of _____
 - a. marbles
- b. geology
- c. shapes
- d. baskets

Unit 5 In Nature

3. Yara likes to	old things. This	s will help the env	/ironment.
a. waste	b. form	c. recycle	d. cool
4. Basalt is a type of			
a. wool	b. wood	c. air	d. rock
5. Saving energy at ho	me a dif	ference to climate	e change.
a. does	b. makes	c. puts	d. goes
6. We need more	to finish the	project.	
a. alarms	b. effects	c. materials	d. feeders
The player waved to			
a. title	b. audience	c. container	d. planet
8. Laila had a heatstro			
a. devices		c. result	d. source
9. The Sphinx is made			
a. paper	b. sandstone	c. wool	d. plastic
	Bit by Bit Ex	ercises	
10. Earth is the green	in the solo	ar system.	
a. plant	b. plane	c. plate	d. planet
11 products	s are safe for the env	vironment.	
a. Eco-friendly			d. Electric
12. We saw many		1531	
a. statues		8	d. pens
13. When rocks become			12
d. freeze			
14. The prefix "			u. buvo
a. un-	h die	anething again.	al !
		Sec. 19	a. Ir-
15. A/An is o	a garaen container o		
a. hanging basket		b. games conso	
c. bird feeder	Partico.	d. electronic de	
The verb "save" is the a. taste	e opposite of the ver	""d	
a. taste	b. waste	c. see	d. like
17. The weather is			
a. ideal			d. broken
	Expression and P	repositions	
18. Please, switch	the lights befo	ore you leave the	room.
a. on	b. off	c. at	d. of

19. If you want to get up early for work, _____ the alarm on your phone. a. send b. waste C. set d. play 20. Don't touch wires when your hands are wet. a. electronic b. electricitu c. electric d. electrician Language قواعد لغوية **Definite and Indefinite Articles** أدوات المعرفة والنكرة Articles (the / a-an) الأدوات أدوات المعرفة (The definite article (the تستخدم أداة المعرفة (the): ا- قبل الاسم المحدد (شيء ما) والمعرف تماما. Ex. I bought the mobile we saw last week. ٦- مع الاسم الذي تم ذكره في الجملة للمرة الثانية (الأولى نكرة والثانية معرفة). Ex. I saw a boy in the street. The boy is a student. ٣- مع الأشياءالفريدة من نوعها في الكون مثل (الأرض – الشمس – القمر – السماء – أسماء البحار والأنهار والمحيطات) . Ex. The sun gives us heat and light. Ex. The moon appears at night. Ex. The Red Sea is very deep. ع- مع أسماء الأماكن العامة والمشهورة والسينما والمسرح وأماكن الترفيه العامة. the zoo - the Hilton Hotel - the cinema - the theater - the club. Ex. I went to the cinema yesterday. ه- مع أسماء الآلات الموسيقية Ex. I play the piano every Friday. ٦- مع أسماء البلاد المركبة أو اختصارات البلاد: the United Kingdom (the UK) - the United States of America (the USA) Ex. The United Arab Emirates / (the UAE). ٧- مع الاختر اعات والاكتشافات الحديثة: Ex. The internet is a great invention. ٨ - مع بعض الصفات للدلالة على اسم جمع (من الصفة):

The indefinite article (a/an) أدوات النكرة

وهي أدوات تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يعد.

Ex. He is reading a book in the library.

Ex. The rich should help the poor.

Ex. I saw an elephant in the zoo yesterday.

an

ا- تستخدم أمام الاسم المفرد الذي يعد ويبدأ بصوت متحرك (vowels) (a.e.i.o.u) an apple - an elephant - an orange - an ox - an impact

٦- تستخدم قبل الاختصار ات التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك:

(an X-ray - an SMS - an MP3 player)

٣- إذا بدأت الكلمة بحرف لا يُنطق و لا ينطق نتعامل مع الحرف الذي بعده في النطق: (an hour- an honest man)

a

ا - تستخدم أمام الاسم المفرد الذي يعد ويبدأ بصوت ساكن :

a boy - a pen- a dog - a book - a girl - a horse - (consonants)

إذا نطق حرف (u) كصوت حرف ساكن فيُسبق بأداة النكرة (a) :

(a uniform - a university - a European city - a union).

no article

ا- لانستخدم أداة مع : - أسماءالعلم (أسماءالأشخاص - أسماءالبلاد والقارات - أسماءالأيام والشهور -أسماءالموادالدراسية - أسماء اللغات - أسماء الألعاب الرياضية والأنشطة والهوايات والالقاب.

Ahmed - Cairo- Egypt - Africa - Sunday - May - math - Arabic- tennis - reading - Mr Ali

٢- لا نستخدم اداة قبل صيغة الجمع للاسماء المعدودة (اذا تحدثنا عن النوع)

cars - camels

٣- لا نستخدم اداة قبل (الاسماء غير المعدودة)

sugar - water -rain - marble - cotton

Exercises on Language

10		
	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	

 We find 	these rocks i	n the bottor	n of layers o	f	Earth's surface
. 11		Line Transfer	THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE	Part of the second	

Lithe b. an

c. a

d. no article

2. Many statues from _____ Ancient Greece are made of marble.

a. the

b. an

C. a

d. no article

3. There are a lot of pyramids in _____ Egypt.

a. the

b. an

C. a

d. no article

4. We saw _____ ox in the zoo.

a. a

b. no article

c. the

d. an

5. Aswan is _____ famous city in Egypt.

a. the

b. an

C. a

d. no article

6. I see _____ moon in the sky at night.

a. no article

b. a

c. the

d. an

7. He is carrying _____ bag. The bag is full of books.

a. an

b. a

c. the

d. no article

8	Giant's Causeway in	Ireland is made of stone	е.
a. A	b. An	c. The	d. No article
9 :	science is my favorite	e subject.	
a. A	b. An	c. No article	d. The
10. My friend Add	el traveled to	USA last year.	
a. A	b. An	c. The	d. no article
11. I don't go to s	school on	_ Friday.	
a. A	b. An	c. The	d. no article
	s in Giza		
a. A	b. An	c. the	d. no article
	cat at ho		
a. a		c. the	d. no article
	ch films on		
a . a	b. an	c. the	d. no article
	camels live in the des		
a. A	b. An	c. The	d. No article
16. I never eat			
a . a	b. an	c. the	d. no article
	orange. It was de		4.0
a . a		c. an	d. the
18s	b. An	o no article	d The
18.00			
Complete the	e sentences with the	e correct form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
) good example. Reuse	
2. I live in a villa	age in Andalusia in 💷	(a) Spain.	SB
3. Making electi	ricity uses a lot of	(a) planet's re	sources.
4. Sandstone is	usually found near	(an) Earth's	surface.
5. My sister likes	s playing computer go	ames on (a	n) internet.
6. There are mai	ny rocks in	(a) Earth's crust.	
7. Our teacher,	(an) Mr	Mahmoud,is from Alexa	andria.
8. My father is	(teacher).		5
P. 10 1000 1000 1000 1000 1000 1000 1000	(a meat).	/ 5	31 1 V
J. I HOVEL GUL	(u meut).		







Asking and answering about ways to protect the environment.

• السؤال عن طرق حماية البيئة والاجابة عليها:

Question

- How can we protect the environment?

كيف نستطيع حماية البيئة؟

- How can we be eco-friendly at home?

كيف نصبح أصدقاء للبيئة في المنزل؟

What can we recycle at home?
 ما الذي نستطيع إعادة تصنيعه بالمنزل؟

Answer

- We can protect the environment by saving energy.
 - توفير الطاقة إحدى الطرق لحماية البيئة.
- You can switch off lights, when they aren't in use.
 - يمكنك إطفاء الأنوار الغير مستخدمة.
- We can recycle old bottles. يمكنناإعادة تصنيع الزجاجات البلاستيكية.

Ceneral Exercises on Lessons 3& 4



Complete the following dialogue:

Mahmoud and	l Mustafa are	talking about	how to be	eco-friendly
-------------	---------------	---------------	-----------	--------------

Mahmoud	: What does eco-friendly mean?	
Mustafa	:0	
Mahmoud	: What should we do to help the environment?	
Mustafa	:0	
	: What can I do to save energy?	
Mustafa	: 6	
Mahmoud	: 🚳	?
	: You can have short showers.	
Mahmoud	: That's 6	•



Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

feeder - example - reuse - basket - electricity

There are a lot of things in our trash that we can recycle or ① _____ at home. Plastic bottles are a good ② _____. We can reuse them to make other things, for example a bird ③ _____ or a hanging ④ _____ for your plants. Everyone can save energy in different ways in our life.

			Lessons 38
Choose the correct	ct answer from a , b ,	,c or d:	
1. Set the	to help you get up at	7:30 am for work	
a. minerals	b. shower	c. alarm	d. energy
2. Try not to			
a. cool	b. waste	c.keep	d. protect
3. A/An is			
a. oven	33		
4. I always put wheat			
	b. fence		
5. A: Do you have			
a. the6. Wood floats on the		c. an	a. no article
			d ausface
7. I have k	b. middle	C. DOLLOTT	u. surface
a. no article	1000	c. an	d. the
8. Don't waste a lot o			a. trie
	b. shower		d basket
9. My friend			
	b. no article		
10. you can			
	b. plant		
Complete the sent	ences with the corre	ct form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
1. Do you like playing			
2. Who is		am?	
3. I played games for $_{\scriptscriptstyle -}$	(a hour).		
4 (A) Rive	r Nile is very importar	it for Egypt.	
6 Write a paragraph	of about (80-90) wor	ds on:	
	"How to save e		
			7 7
	نية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية	الاحاية عن الأسئلة الآن	- ىمكنك من خلال
- Where can you pu			and billion of
- What should we d	lo to save energy?		991
- How can we save			

- How can we save electricity?

- We can save water by..... - We can save electricity.....

- You can put the trash......

- يمكنك استخدام العبارا<mark>ت الاتية</mark>

- We should save energy.....





Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

		70	
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقي	worth (adj) (n)	ذو قيمة – مستحق
poet (n)	شاعر	trash (n)	قمامة
poem (n)	قصيدة	dive (d)	يغوص
recyclable (adj)	قابل لاعادة التصنيع	save (d)	يوفر
tech devices (n)	اجهزة إلكترونية		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

bees (n)	نحل	changes (n)	تغییرات
stanza (n)	مقطع/ بيت شعري	eco-blog (n)	مدونة صديقة للبيئة
lights (n)	مصابيح الإضاءة	human (adj)	انساني
value (n)	قيمة	text message (n)	ر سالة نصية
blank (n)	فارغ	recycling bin (n)	سلة مهملات
below (prep)	اسفل	personification (n)	التجسيد
line (n)	سطر	dolphin (n)	الحولفين
structure (n)	هیکل/بناء	rhyme (n)	يسجع/يقفي
rhyme (d) (n)	يتناغم/قافية	cycle (d)	یرکب دراجة
tap (n)	حنفية/صنبور		

Definitions

look after	ب ينتدي	to take care of	
worth	قيمة/ مستحق	the value of something	
dive	يغوص	jump into the water	
Earth	كوكب الارض	the planet we live on	

Expressions & Prepositions

grow hotter	يزداد سخونة	travel to school	يذهب للمدرسة
make changes	تحدث تغييرات	(be) in need	محتاج
		switch off / turn off	يطفىء – يغلق
rather than	بدلا من	decide to	يقرر ان
no matter	لايهم	put (something) in	يضح (شئ) في مكان

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym e	Antonym / (المضاد Opposite
fun	ممتج	enjoyable	boring	ممل
worth	ذو قيمة	value	worthless	عديم الفائدة

Prefixes & Suffixes الكلمات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-able	لتحويل الفعل لصفة	recyclable
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال أو ظرف	easily

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE	The same of the sa		
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
drive	يقود	drove	driven
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
throw	يرمي	threw	thrown
ride	يركب	rode	ridden

Language Notes

`ملاحظات لغوية ﴿

1 plant / planet

• plant نيات

• planet کوکب

Ex. The boy watered the plants.

Ex. The Earth is the planet where we live.

2) poem / poet

e poem قصيدة

• poet يدلش

Ex. I read a beautiful poem yesterday.

Ex. Hafez Ibahim is called the poet of the Nile.

(3) rather than

• rather than بدلامن

Ex. I'd like to drink coffee rather than tea.

Check on Language Notes 🗸



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I watered the _____ yesterday.
 - a. plants
- b. planes
- c. plans
- d. planets
- My friend's father is a great _____. He writes poems.
 - a. poem
- b. poet
- c. poetry
- d. boat
- 3. Neptune is the farthest _____ from the sun.
 - a. plane
- b. planet
- c. plant
- d. plate



Reading and listening skills (1988) SB Page (64)





Helping the Earth

Stanza 1

As the Earth grows hotter and wetter(1), We need to learn to look after it better.

A drought (2) here, a flood there,

We can help, no matter(3) where!

Stanza 2

Turn off lights that you don't need, Turn off that tap(4), others are in need(5), Walk or cycle (6) rather than drive.

Don't throw plastic where dolphins dive!

Stanza 3

Plant more flowers, plant more trees, For the birds and for the bees.

We must try for all we're worth (7),

So we can save our Planet Earth!

Moira Dutton



- ٦. جفاف
- ٣. لا بهم
- ع. صنبور
- ه. محتاج ٦. يركب دراجة
- ٧. ذوقيمة/
 - مستحق

Identifying the structure of a poem

Every poem has a different structure. The structure helps to show us what the poem is about or how the poet felt when he or she wrote it. When you look at a poem and you want to know what structure it has, notice these things about it:

كل قصيدة لها بناء مختلف. يساعد هذا البناء في توضيح موضوع القصيدة وما هو شعور الشاعر عند كتابة القصيدة. هناك ثلاث عوامل للتعرف على القصيدة:

- 1. How many stanzas it has -Stanzas are the different parts of a poem that usually have a blank line between them.
- 2. Which words rhyme -When two words end with the same sound, they rhyme.
 - ٣- مدى تناغم الكلمات. عندما تنتهى كلمتان في صوت واحد. يكون لهما نفس القافية.
- 3. Personification When the poet gives qualities of a person to a thing.
 - ٣- التشخيص/التجسيد. عندما يعطى الشاعر صفات بشرية إلى شيء غير عاقل.



SB Page (66)



HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

فیلم وثائقی

٤. صديق للبيئة

٦. قابل للتدوير

۲. بشری ۳. تغیرات

ه. صحي

Rami's eco blog



Hi, my name's Rami. Last year, I watched a documentary⁽¹⁾ about the effects of human⁽²⁾ activities on the planet. After that, I decided to make some changes⁽³⁾ in my life because I wanted to be more eco-friendly⁽⁴⁾. In the past, I always traveled

my life because I wanted to be more ecofriendly⁽⁴⁾. In the past, I always traveled to school by bus, but now I ride my bike to school. It only takes 15 minutes, it's healthy⁽⁵⁾, and it's fun!

Before, I never put my trash in the recycling bins and I

never thought about if it was recyclable (6) or not. Now, I always look for the right type of recycling bin and put my trash in it, because I understand how important it is to reuse (7) the Earth's resources.

Now, I also try to switch off all my tech devices - like my laptop and my games console - when I'm not using them, because I know that this saves energy and that's good for the planet, too.

We can all do things that help in small ways!

What changes have you made to help the planet? Leave a comment below.



comment:

23 commens

Reading Skill		جابة بالاسفل]	مهارة القراءة (الا
1. The passage is r	mainly about a/an		يتحدث النص عن
a. letter	b. blog	c. email	d. paragraph
2. How did Ali trave	el to school?		كيف ذهب على للمدرسة؟
3. Why did Ali look for the right type of recycling bin?		لماذا بحث عليّ عن سلة المهملات المناسبة؟	
Writing Skill		ىل تساعد فى موضو	مهارة الكتابة (جم
1. I watched a docu	ımentary about		شاهدت فيلم وثائقي عن
2. I decided to mak	e some changes in life.		
			قررت أن اغير أشياء في حياتي.
		bin.	دائماً ابحث عن السلة المناسبة لوضع القمامة.

3. Because he understood how important it was to reuse the Earth's resources.

2. He always traveled to school by bus.

Answers:

Exercises on Vocabulary



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. My father is a g	great	writes poems.	
a. post	b. poet	c. poetry	d. player
2. ""	is the value of somethi	ng.	
a. Word	b. Worth	c. World	d. Ward
3. I watched an in	teresting	about wild animals	last night.
a. documentry	b. song	c. book	d. mobile
4. You should	ாருந்தான் - energy. It's v	ery important in ou	ır life.
a. safe	b. save	c. waste	d. dive
5. The trash in the	e recycling bin is	We can us	se it again.
a. hard	b. recyclable	c. soft	d. messy
6. The poem cons	sists of three		
a. rooms	exid & stanzas	c upensile	d. letters
7. I decided to mo	ıke somei	n my life to make i	t better.
	b. changes		d. resources
8. Don't throw	in the street.	Put it in the bin.	religione in the large
a. plant	b. trash	c. money	d. air
9. My laptop and	games console are typ	es ofd	evices.
a. tech	b. ancient	c. active	d. waste

10. We should reuse th	e Earth's	•	
a. changes	b. resources	c. planets	d. ways
11. I enjoy	to school. I like riding	a bike.	
a. cycling	b. running	c. walking	d. eating
12. I turn off the	to save water.		
a. lap	b. tap	c. cap	d. fun
13. Human activities ha	ve a lot of	on our planet.	
a. offers	b. effects	c. dolphins	d. poets
	Expressions & pr	epositions	
14. The dolphin	under water.		
	b. dives	c. cycles	d. walks
15. I switch	the tech devices who	en I'm not using tl	nem.
a. on	b. off	c. over	d. at
16. I decided	_ be more eco- frien	dly.	
a. at	b. to	c. for	d. of
Using conjunc	Language		قوا <mark>ع </mark>
• Conjunctions are wo	rds we use to join t	wo parts of a se	ntence together.
			الروابط هي كلما <i>ت لر</i> بط ج
and (g)			
We use it to add info	rmation.		
		علومة. 🖾 🚾	تستخدم (and) لاضافة د
Ex. I look for the recycli	ng bin <mark>and</mark> put my tra	ish in it.	
الکن) but		griff gar	
We use it to contrast	informationلمتين	اقض بینِ فکر تین او ک	تستخدم للتعبير عن التن
Ex. I always traveled to	school by bus, but no	ow I ride my bike	to school.
because (الال	· Aij w		
We use it to explain in	nformation or give o	reason for son	nething.
e parties on parties of the second			تستخدم لتوضيح السبب
Ex. I went to bed early l			



Exercises on Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1	. I switch off my laptop	o my gan	nes console wher	n I'm not using them
	a. because	b. but	C. SO	d. and
2	. I decided to make so	me changes in my lif	e	I want to be more
	eco-friendly.			
	a. but		c. because	
3	. I put my trash in the i			
	a. because	b. so		d. or
		Bit by Bit Exe	rcises	
4	. He was rich,	he was unhappy		
	a. because		c. but	d. or
5	. She didn't go to scho	olshe w	as ill.	
	a. and	b. but	c. so	d. because
6	. She made a great me	eal ate it		
	a. because	b. and	c. so	d. but
7.	Ali bought rice	pasta from the	market.	
	a. because	b. and	c. so	d. but
8.	Our family didn't go to	the beach	our car broke	down.
	a. and	b. because	c. so	d. but
9.	She stayed home	she was ill	•	2.3
	a. because	b. and	c. but	d. so
10.	He couldn't get up ea	rly he st	ayed up late.	
	a. and	b. because	c. so	d. or
11.	I ride my bike. It's hed	althy fun	•	
	a. because	b. so	c. and	d. at
12.	Plant more trees	-,-,- flowers for the	ne birds and bees	S.
	a. and	b. because	C. SO	d. but
13.	This mobile is nice,	it is too ex	cpensive.	
	a. because	b. but	C. SO	d. or
14.	It's a difficult question	ı,I can	answer it.	dentemperature of the first
	a. because	b. so	c. but	d. or
15.	My friend was late for	the work	he got up late.	
	a. and	b. so	c. because	d. but

			Lessons	5&
Complete the	sentences with correc	t form of the wo	ord(s) in brackets:	
1. My laptop	(but) electronic	devices use a lot	of energu.	9
	nt more trees		33	
	ctronic devices	- 27. E	a lot of alastriaitu	
		A-31	The second secon	•
	hard(but) I			
	ol(but) my ho			
	ı bike,(beca			
	pet(but) he			
My sister studie	es hard(but)	she wants to be	a dentist.	
C en	gal Exercise	on Les	sons 5& 6	
-	following dialogue:			
	del about an eco-friend	ly blog post		
Amr: What are Adel: I'm writing				
				7
	how to be eco-friendly.			•
Amr : 20				7
Adel: You shoul	d save energy.			
Amr : How can I				
	nk switching off devices			
				that.
A			Itt ac	, triut.
52 200 07 72 07	orrect answer from a, b	hine	an to	
	about how to re	E		
a. game	b. documentary	c. viewerdiber	d. laptop	
	s a group of lines in a poe			
a. poet	b. stanza	c. structure	d: letter	
3. Turn off the tap:	s. We08 the wo	iter you are was	ting.	
d. feed	b. need in the	c. speed	d. try	
4. My teacher is ki	nd helpful.			
a. because	The second secon	c. and	d. so	-

c. dirty

5. You should be _____ to save our planet.

b. careless

a. eco-friendly

d. tired

A	post of (80-90) words	to be eco-friendly	جاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)
Write a blog	Things you do	about: to be eco-friendly номі	جاب عنه في آخر الوحدة) "
Write a blog	post of (80-90) words "Things you do	about: to be eco-friendly	جاب عنه في آخر الوحدة) "
Write a blog	post of (80-90) words "Things you do	about: to be eco-friendly	جاب عنه في آخر الوحدة) "
Write a blog	post of (80-90) words	about: to be eco-friendly	جاب عنه في آخر الوحدة) "
Write a blog	post of (80-90) words	about: to be eco-friendly	جاب عنه في آخر الوحدة) "
A	post of (80-90) words	about:	جاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)
A			
3. always - I - loc	ok for - type - the right -	of recycling - bin	
	e - to - eco-friendly - mo		
1. throw - <u>Don't</u> -	- plastic - dive - where -	dolphins.	
Rearrange th	ne following words to	make correct ser	itences:
a. plays	b. takes	c. stops	d. writes
50	to school. It only		
a. cycle	b. dive	c. drive	d. stop
9. I went to the F	Red Sea to	and see the coral	
a. because	b. but	2	d. that
8 I always trave	led to school by bus,	c. to	
u. Ol		O to	d. with
7. I decided a. of	b. by		
	b. for make some ch		d. of

Review on Unit 5

Key Vocabulary	المفردات الرئيسية
drought (n) جفاف	minerals (n) نادن
wildfire (n)	eco- friendly (adj) صديق للبيئة
flood (n)	layers (n)
water scarcity (n) ندرة المياة	basalt (n) حجر البازلت
heatstroke (n) ضربة شمس	hanging basket (n) (قلحم زرع (معلق)
عاصفة storm (n)	rocks (n) صخور
hygiene (n) النظافة الشخصية	موارد/مصادر resources
transportation (n) وسائل النقل والمواصلات	cosume (d)
climate change (n) يتغير المناخي	melt (ed)
technologies (n) تقنیات	form (ed)
air conditioning (n) تكييف الهواء	marble حجر الرخام
impact (n) تاثیر	sandstone (n) حجر رملي
affect (ed) (v) يؤثر	documentary (n) فيلم وثائقي
travel (ed) یسافر/ینتقل	recyclable (adj) قابل لاعادة التصنيع
miss (ed)	tech devices (n) اجهزة الكترونية
produce (d)	خوقیمة - مستحق worth (adj) (n)
bird feeder (n) الطيور	يوفر save (d) (v)
electronic devices (n) أجهزة الكترونية	



Language

قواعد لغوية

صفات المقارنة والتفضيل Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

تنقسم الصفات الى قصيرة وطويلة.

🚳 من امثلة الصفات القصيرة : 🦳

noisy صديق للبيئة green صديق للبيئة

🔵 من أمثلة الصفات الطويلة

dangerous خطير expensive غالى الثمن attractive

- ♦ نستخدم صيغة المقارنة Comparative للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.
 - نستخدم صيغة التفضيل Superlative للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.

● تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلى:

Comparative	Superlative
er + than + er + than "higher than"	the + صفة + est "the highest"
a o أقراط أكبوراً c s more / less + صفة + than	الأقل الأكثر عفة + the most / the least
	er + than + er + than "higher than" "ligher than"

bad عبد better than the best bad bad worse than the worst

far عبد farther / further than the farthest / furthest

أدوات المعرفة والنكرة Definite and Indefinite Articles

Articles (the / a-an) النووات (

The definite article (the) اداة المعرفة

تستخدم أداة المعرفة (the):

ا- قبل الاسم المحدد (شيء ما) والمعرف تماما.

Ex. I bought the mobile we saw last week.

٢- مَعَ الأشياءالفريدة من نوعها في الكون مثل (الأرض – الشمس – القمر – السماء – أسماء البحار والأنهار والمحيطات} .

Ex. The sun is very hot.

The indefinite article (a/an) ادوات النكرة

وهي أدوات تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يعد.

Ex. He reads a book in the library.

Ex. I saw an elephant in the zoo yesterday.

an

An apple

ا - تستخدم أمام الاسم المفر دالذي يعد ويبدأ بصوت متحرك (a.e.i.o.u) (vowels

a

a boy

ا- تستخدم أمام الاسم المفرد الذي يعد ويبدأ بصوت ساكن :

no article

ا- لانستخدم أداة مع : - أسماءالعلم (أسماءالأشخاص - أسماءالبلاد والقارات - أسماءالأيام والشهور - أسماءالموادالدراسية - أسماء اللغات - أسماء الألعاب الرياضية والأنشطة والهوايات والالقاب.

Ahmed - Cairo- Egypt - Africa - Sunday - May - math - Arabic- tennis - reading - Mr Ali

الستخدام الروابط "Using conjunctions "and , but & because" الستخدام الروابط

Conjunctions are words we use to join two parts of a sentence together.

الروابط هي كلمات لربط جزئين لجملة او كلمتين معا .

whed -

and (g)

Ex. He turned on the TV and watched the news.

but (لکن)

Ex. I always traveled to school by bus, but now I ride my bike to school.

لال) because

Ex. I went to bed early because I was tired.



Paragraphs& Emails

Lessons 3, 4

There are many ways to save energy. To save energy at home switch off the lights, TVs, computers and all of your electronic devices when they aren't in use. Don't leave them on stand-by as this a great way to save energy. To save water, don't spend a long time in the shower. We can recycle old plastic bottles. We can use them to make new things.

Lessons 5, 6

I wanted to be more eco-friendly. I traveled to school by bus, but now I ride my bike to school. It only takes 15 minute, it's healthy and fun. I never put my trash in the recycling bin and I never thought about if it was recyclable or not. Now I always look for the right type of recycling bin and put my trash in it. Because I understand how important it is to reuse the Earth's resources.

Al-Azhar

We can recycle a lot of things at home. We can recycle plastic we can make a bird feeder from old palstic bottles. We can recycle old paper. We can make new boxes from old paper.

General Exercises Unit 5

2014 1

From : ayman@student.com

To: mustafa@gmail.com

Subject: how to save energy

Dear Mustafa,

How are you? How are your family? You can save energy in different ways. You can save electricity at home. You should turn off the lights when you aren't using them, you should take short showers at home to save water. Don't leave the electronic devices on stand by because they use a lot of electricity.

Yours

Mustafa

Al Azhar Exercises

A: Listening

Listen and cho	ose the correct answ	ver from a, b, c o	or d:
			نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب
1. Hatem wants to	be		
a. lazy	b. eco-friendly	c. sad	d. helpless
2. Hatem has a	not a bath to so	ave water.	
a. kite	b, shower	c. bike	d. book
	B: Languag	e Functions	
Complete the formula in the formu	ollowing dialogue:		
			₽ =
Ahmed : What a	re you reading?		
Bassem : 0			
Ahmed : What is	this book about?		
Bassem : @			
Ahmed : Rocks!	3		?
Bassem : They are	e sandstone, marble, a	and basalt.	
Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b	o, c or d:	
1. Water	affects our environmer	nt badly. The trieble	rts(ö.)
a. skill	b. scarcity	c. crop	d. fall
2. I think science is	more exciting	_ math.	
a. that		c. then	d. than
3. "" mear	ns that there isn't enou	gh water for ever	word one.
a. Flood	b. Drought	c. Crop	d. Feeder
4. When you heat ic	e, it		
a. melts		c. designs	d. plays
5. Please, switch	the lights at ni	ght to save electi	ricity.
a. off	b. for	c. on	d. at



C: Reading Comprehension



Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

There are three types of rocks. I read about them today. **They** are basalt, sandstone, and marble. Sandstone is usually found near the Earth's surface. It's formed from the broken parts of other rocks and material when they press together. The youngest layers of sandstone are at the top. The oldest layers are at the bottom. The Ancient Egyptians used sandstone to build things like the Sphinx in Giza.

	llowing questions: title for the passage.		
2. Mention two ty	pes of rocks.		
3. Where can you	ı find sandstone?		
B. Choose the co	rrect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
4. The underlined	l pronoun " <u>they</u> " refers	to	
a. books	b. rocks	c. flowers	d. Egyptians
5. The sandstone	is found near the Earti	n's	
a. face	b. surface	c. water	d. wood
Reorder the f	ollowing words to mo	ıke meaningful se	entences:
1. change - The E	arth's - Climate - affec	cts - weather.	
2. grow - Theu - in	n - vegetables - garden	ı - the	
			net's - the
4. energy - import	ant - <u>Saving</u> - is - for -	planet - our.	
	D: V	Vriting	**************************************
6 Write a parag	raph of FIVE (5) sente		(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)
		(a) (b) (a) (a)	Anna Managarania

General Exercises on Unit 5

A: Listening



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

			يص الاستماع احر الكتاب
1. Being eco-friendly r	means taking care of	the	
a. bus	b. environment	c. shower	d. plastics
2. You should turn off	the when	you aren't using	them.
a. papers	b. glasses	c. lights	d. planets
3. You should take sh	ort to save	water.	
a. books	b. showers	c. taps	d. statues
4. You can recycle	bottles.		
a. wood	b. glass	c. plastic	d. leather
. 1	B: Language	Functions	
Complete the follo	owina dialogue:		
Gamal and Hisham a	re talking about cu	mate change	
Gamal : Hello! Hisha	m. How are you?		
Hisham: Hello! Gama	l, fine thanks.		
Gamal : 10			?
Hisham: The weather	is too hot today.	vegetables	r - Fil -
Gamal : I think climat	e change is a very bi	g problem.	
Hisham : @			?
Gamal: We should h	elp to protect the env	vironment.	
Hisham : 🔞			
Hisham: (3) Gamal: You are right	. Saving energy is a	good idea.	
			·?·
Gamal : You can turn	off lights when you		······································
I the terminal of the second			





Read and complete the text with words from the list:

drought - hot - warmer - leaves - money

I'm Leonie. I live in a village in Andalusia in Spain. Hot weather in summer is
normal for us, but this summer the highest temperature was 46°c. That's about five
degrees 🚳 than it normally. My family is having a lot of problems of the
2 weather here. Because of the hot weather, there's a 8
in the south of Spain right now. The tomato plants on our farm are getting smaller
and some of their @ are brown.

C: Reading Comprehension



Read the following, then answer the questions:

Water scarcity is one of the most worrying problems facing the world today. Two billion people don't have enough fresh, clean water for drinking, washing, cooking, and growing food. One of the reasons for water scarcity is climate change. Water scarcity affects people in different ways.

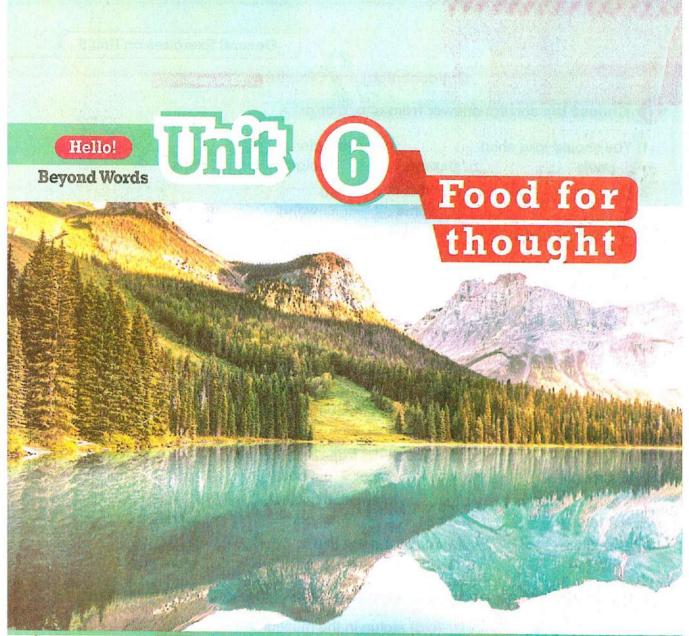
Farmers can't grow many crops as **they** used to. A lack of water can also mean that people have to walk a long way to find it. The biggest impact can be on children who have less time to spend in school. This can be more **dangerous** than for adults.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main	idea of the passage?	P 45		
2. What's the reas	on for water scarcity?			
3. Summarize the	second paragraph in o	ne sentence.		
B. Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b	, c or d:		
4. The underlined	pronoun " <u>They</u> " refers	to		
a. children	b. farmers	c. adults	d. problems	
5. The biggest imp	act of water scarcity co	an be on		
a. plants	b. children	c. countries	d. crops	
6. The word "dang	erous" is the opposite	of		
a. save	b. safe	c. thief	d. bad	

D: Vocabulary and Structure

6 Choose the c	orrect answer from a, b	o, c or d:		
	e short to so		d. taps	
SUPPLY AREAS AND HE	a lot of fuel and e	100 mg 1 mg 100 mg	a. tapo	
		c. writes	d. eats	
	pful kind.			
	b. because	c. and	d. so	
4 ric	h should help the poor.			
a. A	b. An	c. The	d. no article	
5. People should	be to save o	our planet.		
a. poor	b. eco-friendly	c. sad	d. lazy	
	fix "" to turn t		e" into adjective.	
	bable		dity	
	the alarm to get up			
•	b. set	c. sat	d. waste	
	started and burnt all the t			
	b. wildfire		d. rock	
	is the interes	100	done	
	b. most		d. worse	
	restaurant. I didn b. bad		d. more bad	
/_				
Complete the	sentences with the corr	ect form of the	word(s) in brackets:	
1. This statue is	(old) statue in	n the museum.		
2. The blue whale	e is (bigger)	animal in the w	orld.	
3. Water scarcity	is one of the most worryi	ng problems in	(a) worl	d.
He put his bool	k in the bag	(but) went to so	chool.	
	E Wri	tina		
A write an one			7397100 "	
write all ellia	il of 80-90 words on:			
To your friend Mu	etafa about eaving energ	C 1 1 19 34	عنه قبل الاختبار)	امجاب
Carrier 1	stafa about saving energ	•	atudant sam	
the second of the second of the	nan and your email addre	NE DO DE HARME	ystudent.com.	
roui mena s ema	il address is mustafa@gi	mail.com.		



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

An article about traditional food; A menu; An article about a recipe; The Living Café: a short story

Listening:

Understand descriptions of celebration favorite foods

Speaking:

Discuss food choices; Talk about celebration foods

Language:

Wh-questions in the past simple; Adverbials of time and place

Writing:

A blog post about favorite foods





Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	V CANA		
apartment (n)	شقة سكنية	main course (n)	الوجبة الرئيسية
meal (n)	وجبة	starters (n)	مُقبلات
oven (n)	فرن	dessert (n)	تحلية
restaurant (n)	ومحكم	special (n)	خاص- مميز
snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	delicious (adj)	لذيذ
spices (n)	توابل	waiter (n)	جرسون/نادل
menu (n)	قائمة طعام	serve (d)	يقدم طعام- يخدم
	Foo	ods -	
hummus (n)	سلطة الحمص	chickpea paste (n)	معجون الحمص
Om Ali (n)	أم على (طبق للتحلية)	hawawshi (n)	حواوشي
koshari (n)	کشري	meat (n)	لحمة
sweet potato (n)	بطاطا	chipsi mayai (n)	شيبسي ماياي (أكلة تنزانية
shawerma (n)	شاورما	fries (n)	بطاطس مقلية
corn-on-the-cob (n)	كوز الذرة	cheese (n)	جبنة
maakouda (n)	المعقودة (أكلة بالمغرب)	pepper (n)	فلفل
tomatoes (n)	طماطم	eggah (n)	aặç
cucumber (n)	خيار	basbousa (n)	نسنوسق
fish kebab (n)	كباب السمك	baklawa (n)	بقلاوة
ruz sayadieh (n)	ارز صیادیة	falafel (n)	فلافل مستندين
	Countries	s & Cities	
Tanzania	دولة تنزانيا	Morocco	دولة المغرب
Arusha	مدینة اروشا(تنزانیا)	Agadir	(مدينة أغادير) المغرب
Algeria	دولة الجزائر	Tunisia	دولة تونس

Vocabulary 📴

المفردات الاضافية

		T.	
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	warm (adj)	دافئ
unless (conj)	اذالم	quick (adj)	سريع
order (n / v ed)	أمر – يأمر	pan (n)	مقلاه
service (n)	خدمة	middle east (n)	الشرق الاوسط
sweet shop (n)	محل حلويات	popular (adj)	مشهور – شعبي
taste (n / v / ed)	مذاق-يتذوق	bread (n)	خبز
traditional (n)	تقليدي	bake (d)	يخبز
plate (n)	طبق	arrive (d)	يصل
comfortable (adj)	مريح	boil (ed)	يغلي
Egyptian (n)	مصري	change (n / v ed)	تغيير-يغير
type (n)	نوع	improve (d)	یحسن/یطور

Definitions

apartment	شقة	a set of rooms on one floor where someone lives.
oven	فرن	a piece of equipment that food is cooked inside.
menu	قائمة طعام	a list of food that are available in a restaurant.
starters	مُقبلات	a small amount of food eaten at the start of a meal.
dessert	تحلية	sweet food served after the main part of a meal.

Expressions & Prepositions

it tastes great	مذاقه عظيم	ask to		يطلب من
easy to make	سهل الصنع	tell about		يخبرعن
need to	يحتاج أن	add to		يضيفالي
want to	يريد أن	decide to		يقرر أن
stay for	يمكثلمدة	come back		يعود إلي
invite to	يدعوإلي	pay for	1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-	يدفئ ثمن
on the menu	في القائمة	come from	0.02	يأتيمن
make changes	يحدث تغييرات	anyway		على اى حال
at that point	في هذا التوقيت			



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Antonym / Op	المضاد posite
near	قريب	close	far	عتد
sell	يبيع	advertise	buy	يشترى
love	يحب	like	hate	یکرہ
small	صغير	tiny - little	big	کبیر
good	ختت	great	bad	دريس
healthy	صحي	beneficial	unhealthy	غیر صحی

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	traditional
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	celebration
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	starter
-able	تحول الفعل او الاسم إلى صفة	comfortable
-ed	تحول الفعل او الاسم إلى صفة	fried

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

oonjugations of lifegular verbs		عظريفات الاقتال احتير المستعمة		
Present		Past simple	Past Participle	
make	يصنع	made	made	
sell	يبيع	sold	sold	
know	يعرف	knew	known	
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten	
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept	
bring	يدفر يحضر	brought	brought	

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية 🎢

سىتغرق to + inf + فترة زمنية + to + inf

Ex. It took 3 hours to finish my homework.

Unit 6 Food for thought

enjoy, finish, keep + v + ing / n

- Ex. I enjoy reading the book.
- Ex. I enjoy the weather in Alex.

3) dessert - desert :

- م dessert (n) تحلية
 - Ex.: What will you have for dessert?
- صحراء (n) صحراء
- Ex.: Few plants grow in the desert.

Check on Language Notes 🗸



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. It took Ali 3 hours _____ his homework.
 - a. finished
- b. finish
- c. to finish
- d. finishes

- 2. Omar enjoys _____ in nature.
 - a. walks
- b. walking
- b. to walk
- d. walked

- 3. Wild animals usually live in the
 - a. sea

- b. desert
- b. river
- d. dessert
- 4. We had ice cream as a ____ after lunch.
 - a. desert
- b. dessert
- b. starter
- d. course



Reading



SB Page (69)

Food on the Go

استمع إلى النصوص



We asked our readers to tell us about the traditional⁽¹⁾ food that they love. Here's what they said!

Most Egyptians know hawawshi. It is a type⁽²⁾ of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices⁽³⁾ inside it. Some people like to add cheese to it too. You bake it in the oven⁽⁴⁾ and eat it warm. Delicious⁽⁵⁾! You can also find it in some parts of the Middle East.

Samir, Cairo

Chipsi mayai, which is also sometimes called zege, is a very popular traditional food here in Tanzania. We make it with fries and eggs fried in oil⁽⁶⁾. I love it, but I don't think it is a very healthy snack⁽⁷⁾, so I don't eat it very often!

Elizabeth, Arusha.



- ا. تقلیدی
 - ٦. نوځ
 - ٣. توابل
 - ع. فرن
 - ه. لذيذ
 - ٦. زيت
- ٧. وجبه خفيفة

Maakouda are very popular⁽⁸⁾ in Morocco, Algeria, and Tunisia. We make them

with potatoes. We boil the potatoes in hot water, then make them into small balls. Sometimes we put meat, fish, or cheese in them, too. Finally, we fry them in a lot of oil and serve⁹⁾ them in a sandwich. They're so good!



Youssef, Agadir

۸. مشهور – شعبي ۹. پخدم – نقدم

Reading Skill

معارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

- 1- What is the main idea in the second paragraph?
- 2- The word popular can be replaced by......
 - a. warm
- b. liked
- c. probable
- d, noisu
- 3- Give words from the passage that mean: old tastu

Writing Skill

Mars.

معارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)

- 1- Hawawshi is a type of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices inside it.
 - الحواوشي هو نوع من الخبز باللحم والخضر وات والتوابل بداخله.
- 2- Chipsi mayai is a very popular traditional food in Tanzania.
- شيبسى مايا (هو طعام تقليدى شائع في تنزانيا).
- 3- Maakouda are very popular in Morocco, Algeria, and Tunisia.
- المعقودة منتشرة جدًا في المغرب والجزائر وتونس.

3- traditional- delicious

2-b. liked

1- Hawawshi is a type of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices inside it.

:SISWSUY



Skills

Finding Information in different parts of a text:

– إيجاد المعلومات في أجزاء النص المختلفة

- First, think about the type of information you want to find. Are you looking for a noun or a verb?
 - أولاً، فكر في نوع المعلومات التي تريد العثور عليها. هل تبحث عن اسم أم فعل؟
- Next, scan each part of the text. Does it contain key words relating to the information?
 - بعد ذلك، قم بقراءة كل جزء من النص سريعا. هل تحتوي على كلمات رئيسية تتعلق بالمعلومات؟
- Also, look at headings or other features (such as the names and locations of the writers) that tell you what each part of the text is about.
- انظر أيضًا إلى العناوين أو الميزات الأخرى (مثل أسماء الكتّاب ومواقعهم) التي تخبرك بموضوع كل جزء من النص..



SB Page (70)

Nile view cafe				
Starters	Main	Desserts		
Special salad (tomatoes, cucumbers, onions, green	Fish kebabs	Baklawa		
peppers)	Koshari	Om Ali		
Hummus (chickpea paste with bread)	Ruz sayadieh (fish with rice)	Basbousa		
Eggah (eggs with onions		Chocolate, ice		
and tomatoes)	Sayadieh el samak (baked fish with tomatoes)	cream		

ا. مطعم

٣. لسوء الحظ

۷. خاص- مميز

١٠. الوجبة الرئيسية

٦. مريح

ع. وجبة

ه. مقبلات ٦. طلبنا

۸. جرسون

٩. لذبذ

اا. أطباق

١٤. قرر

ها. حلویات

۱٦. تغيرات ١٧. بالتأكيد

۱۲. متأكدين

۱۳. عيد ميلاد



SB Page (70)

Dear Sir or Madam.

My family and I ate at your restaurant (1) last Wednesday. The restaurant is clean and comfortable (2), but unfortunately (3), we did not enjoy our meal (4) very much at all. It took a long time for our starters (5) to arrive. We kept saying to each other: "When did we order (6) our food? I think it was 40 minutes ago!" I ordered a special (7) salad which must be quick and easy to make. After 50 minutes, the waiter (8) brought our starters to us. The starters tasted delicious (9), but then our main courses came about one minute after we finished eating the starters! We didn't like that at all. We all ordered sauadieh el samak as our main course (10). When it arrived, there weren't any tomatoes on our plates (11). "Why did your cook put no tomatoes on our plates?" we asked the waiter. He said, "We don't have any tomatoes today." After all of that, we weren't sure (12) if we wanted desserts. But, as it was my daughter's birthday (13), we decided (14) to order them anyway. Five minutes after we ordered, the waiter came back to our table and asked us, "What did you order for dessert (15)?" At that point, we decided to pay for the food we had and leave. I had ordered basbousa and I can also buu that in a sweet shop. So, that's what I did! Your restaurant is a nice place, but I really think that you need to make some changes (16). Our

family definitely (17) doesn't want to eat there again unless you improve your service.

Regards,

Randa Al-Katib

Exercises on Vocabulary

Comp	Complete the following dialogue:					
Sarah is trying traditional food for the first time in Cairo Sarah : This falafel is delicious!						
Ahmed	: I'm happy	to hear that.				
Sarah	: 1			?		
Ahmed	: It's made	of beans.				
Sarah	: @					
Ahmed	: Yes, there are many falafel shops in Cairo.					
Sarah	: How much is it?					
Ahmed	: 🔞					
Sarah		out another tradit				
Ahmed	: @					
Sarah	:Koshari! 🧯)		?		
Ahmed	: It's a mix o	of pasta, rice, and	lentils.			
Sarah	: I want to tr	y it.				
Read o	Read and complete					
	spices - d	desserts - delicio	ous- vegetables- I	koshari		
Egyptian f	ood is 🐠	and varied. T	here are many diff	erent dishes to try, from		
meat dishes to sweet @ Some of the most popular Egyptian foods include falafel, @ and baklawa. Many dishes contain fresh @						
10		answer from a,				
	2	SB Exe	The state of the s			
1 \//o all o	rdorod oguad			energia de la companya de la company		
		ieh el samak as o				
C. cours		b. dessert	c. opening	d. starter		
a. list	g dila i die di	b. restaurant	last Wednesday.	ماسلما		
	g one			#U 100 000000		
a. told	u spe		must be quick and	d. watched		
4 What dia	Lucu order fo	b. ordered	? - I ordered bas	d. watched		
			c. desert	a. starter		
	i big					
d. oven	atalu wa did		c. meal			
	atety, we ala			n as the food was cold.		
a. meal		b. town	c. plate	d. menu		

Bit by Bit Exercises

7.	The was	very tasty. But the m	nain course wasn	't the same.	
	a. city	b. town	c. country	d. starter	
8.	3. The food great. I think I'll come here again.				
	a. touches	b. tastes	c. tells	d. says	
9.	A is a list	t of foods in a restau	rant .		
	a. task	b. menu	c. river	d. native	
10.	I the bot	tle with water .			
	a. fell	b. filled	c. failed	d. felt	
11.	My friend lives	to the bank .			
	a. under	b. between	c. above	d. next	
12.	John comes	England. He is E	inglish.		
	a. with	b. over	c. from	d. about	
13.	The opposite of " inter	esting " is			
	a. boring			d. small	
14.	"Tasty " and "	" have the same	e meaning.		
	a. love	b. delicious	c. sell	d. near	
15.	Salah is a	_ football player.			
	a. useless	b. tiny	c. famous	d. unknown	
	Egypt is a great				
	a. city	b. town	c. country	d. village	
	I'm from Egypt. I'm				
	a. French	b. American	c. Egyptian	d. Chinese	
18.	What do you want to _	from the	menu?		
	a. city	b. order	c. country	d. drink	
19.	This restaurant is very	y with to	urists.		
	a. popular	bempty	c. quiet	d. happy	
20.	This restaurant is	We like com	ing here.		
	a. comfortable	b. tiring	c. noisy	d. boring	
21.	The food on this	looks delicio	us.		
	a. cup	b. town	c. plate	d. starter	
		Expressions & Pro			
22	I need to	mu order Can I bay	upbleton. e rice instead of l	nasta?	
22.	a. talk	b. change	G-eat	d sell	
23	Maakouda is very pop				
	d. with		(A) 5777		
	Ita long t			41.11	
	a. made	b. spent		d. had	
25.	This cafe is a good plo	The same of the sa			
	a. take	1 Table 1	C. do	d. call	



Language

قواعد لغوية

Wh- questions in the past simple

ا - الماضي البسيط يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل أي المصدر مضاف اليه (d/ed/ied)

- يضاف (ed) لمعظم الأفعال.
- اذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e) نضع (d)
- اذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن نحذفها ونضع (ied)
- Ex. Adam watched TV yesterday.
- Ex. Mariam arrived yesterday.
- Ex. They studied English last week.

📆 ويوجد افعال شاذة مثل .

buy	bought	يشتري
sell	sold	يبيه -
cut	cut	يقطع
write	wrote	یکتب

📆 ملاحظه هامة :

يكون شكل (verb to be) في الماضي كالاتي:

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد was / wasn't

We / You / they / اسما جمع were / weren't

Ex. She was tired.

Ex. They were at school.

المصدر بدون اضافات (<mark>didn't + inf) المصدر بدون اضافات - ت</mark>م نفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (didn't + inf) المصدر بدون اضافات Ex. Adam didn't send the letter to Suzy.

٣ – في حالة تكوين السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد بمعنى (هل) وتكون الأجابة بـــ (Yes / No) يكون

الشكل كالأتي

- Ex. Did he go to the bank yesterday?
- Yes, he did. / No, he didn't.
- Ex. Were you absent yesterday?
- Yes, I was . / No, I wasn't.
- ?.....مصدر + فاعل + did + أَدَاةَ اسْتَفْهَامَ
- Ex. Where did you live?

- I lived in Minia.
- Ex. How did they go to hospital?
- They went to hospital on foot.

Ex. Why was he happy?

- Because he bought a car.
- Ex. What did you see at the park?
- I saw my friends.
- Ex. When were you absent?
- I was absent yesterday.
- Ex. Who did you go to school with?
- I went with my sister

Exercises on Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. A: did you	go to that restaurant?	? B: Last week.			
a. Where	b. What	c. When	d. How		
2.Why you sto	ay for so long? - The	food wasn't read!	y.		
a. do	b. did	c. does	d. has		
3 much did th	ney pay for the meal?)			
a. What	b. When	c. Where	d. How		
4 did you inv	ite to the birthday par	ty?			
a. How	b. Who	c. When	d. Where		
5. Where did she	in the restaurant	?			
a. sat	b. sits	c. sit	d. sitting		
	Bit by Bit Exe	ercises	10		
6.How your w	eekend?		110000000000000000000000000000000000000		
a. did		c. was	d. do		
7. When did you have yo					
a. had	b. have	c. will have	d. has		
8. How did you go to sch					
a. go	b. going	c. will go	d. went		
9.No, he didn't	Aswan last year.				
a. visit	b. visited	c. go	d. went		
10. When I was young, I o	always foot	ball.			
	b. plays		d. played		
11 you ready for	or the exam last week	c?			
a. Did	b. Were	c. Do	d. Are		
12. How did you	_				
a. feel			d. feeling		
13.What did Adamwhen he arrived?					
a. did 14.When Dind's	b. doing	c. does	d. do		
	birthday?	April - Church			
a, do	b. did	c. was	d. does		
15. I my aunt a		and O			
a. visited	b. visit	c. visiting	d. would visit		
16.We an interesting film last night.					
a. watch			d. watches		
17.They attend the party last month.					
a. won't		c. wasn't	d. don't		
18. They came to my birth		Annual Control (Control (Contr			
a. gives	b. were giving	c. have given	d. gave		

19. When yo	u go to bed las	t night?		
a. did	b. will	c. do	d. was	
20. He came to my hou	se and	some tea with		
a. have	b. has	c. had	d. havi	ng
Complete the ser	itences with c	orrect form of th	e word(s) in bi	ackets:
1.Where				
2 (What)			∍k.	
3.How (dd) you go to sch	nool? - I went by o	car.	
4.No, he didn't	(went) to	Aswan last year.		
5.When I was young, I	l always	(play) footb	oall.	
6.I arrived home and	(sle	eep).		
7.When (i	<mark>s) Dina</mark> last nig	ht?		
Genera	<u>Alexand</u>	ises 🕦 on	Lessons 1& 2	
Complete the following	owing dialogu	ie:		
Nabil saw Amr rur	ning in the st	reet		
Nabil: Why are you				
Nabil: A hospital!	<u>)</u>			?
Amr : My brother br				***************************************
Nabil: Oh, dear 🚳				?
		club and fell over		
Nabil : Who took him	ı to hospital ?			0
Amr : <u>(4)</u>				•
Napit : Can I come w	vith you ?			
Amr : 6				s kind of you.
Read and comple	te the text with	h the words from	the list:	
del	icious - Egypt	ian - food - bread	d - like	
Hawawshi is a traditi	onal 🐠	food .It is a tur	pe of 🙉	with meat
eppers and spices . I				ii mar mout,
Choose the correc	t answer fron	a, b, c or d:		
1. Meat is my main			17.5	25.0
		c. course	d. spice	s
2. They serve the best	10 miles (1976)			Leni ine
a. coffee		c. oil	d. spice	S

Unit 6 Food for thought

I don't like pizza	all.		
a. on	b. for	c. at	d. in
4. I live in a big	in Cairo .		
a. oven	b. apartment	c. river	d. mountain
5. Breakfast, lunch	and dinner are the main	n of	the day.
a. meals	b. ingredients	c. waiters	d. hobbies.
6. Tomatoes, cucui	mbers and onions are th	ne main	of this salad.
a. ovens	b. ingredients	c. cookies	d. courses
7. Doing sports is			
a. nasty	b. quiet	c. unhealthy	d. healthy
8. I want to	my birthday with	my friends.	
 a. celebrate 	b. boil	c. order	d. serve
9. They bake the he	awawshi in the	and eat it wo	arm.
a. cook	b. tank	c. fridge	d. oven
10. To make maako	uda,the po	otatoes in hot wat	er then make them into
small balls.			
a. add	b. boil	c. fry	d. bake
Oomplete the s	entences with the corre	ect form of the wo	ord(s) in brackets:
1. When did you	(traveled) to (Cairo?	
2. How	(do) you go to the park	uesterdau?	
	(do) you have for lunc	or	
	(does) Dina's birthday		
Write a paragr	aph of (80 - 90) words	on:	
	"Your favori	ite food"	3
Milankia wa wa	كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية كلامية ملاميسة	عن الاستلة الاتية ،	- يمكنك من خلال الإج
- What's your t			
	favorite dessert?	السطوالي	
- What flavor			
		، في كتابة الموضوع	– هذه الجمل تساعدك
- My favorite fo			The state of the s
- I get it from .			
THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE	lessert is		
- My tavorite fl	lavor is		



Key Vocabulary



		le 11 . 7 .	
recipe (n.)	وصفة طعام	festival (n.)	مهرجان
research (n.)	بحث علمي	celebration dish (n.) טועים	طبق يتم عمله في الاحتف
task (n.)	مهمة عمل	tasty (adj.)	لذيذ الطعم
famous (adj.)	مشهور	opportunity (n.)	فرصة
ingredients (n.)	مكونات	grilled (adj.)	مشوي
large-scaled fish	سمكة قشرية كبير الحجم	serve (d)	يقدم الطعام
native (adj)	اصلی		

No. of Concession, Name of Street, or other party of the Concession, Name of Street, or other pa	NAME OF TAXABLE	A STATE OF	CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY.	TOTAL SEC	-
777					
Vo	\mathbf{ca}	OT		A VARIA	151
NO SERVICE		tichbée.		AP AR	

المفردات الاضافية

		1	
language (n)	قفا	pudding (n)	حلوى من الدقيق والحليب
country (n)	دولة/بلد	dried (adj)	مجفف
river fish (n)	سمكة تعيش في النهر	coin (n)	قلمد
restaurant (n)	لمجهم	spices (n)	توابل
card (n)	بطاقة/كارت	lamb (n)	لحم الضأن
vacation season (n)	موسم الأجازة	longevity (n)	طول العمر
Christmas (n)	رأس السنة الميلادية	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
fried (adj)	مقلي	dessert (n)	حلوى/طعام التحلية
boiled (adj)	مسلوق/مغلي	circle (d)	يضع دائرة حول
chocolate cake (n)	تورتة الشيكولاتة	underline (d)	يضع خطا تحت
pancake (n)	فطيرة	highlight (ed)	يبرز/يوضح
syrup (n)	پ شراب پر 8 پائستا اوپ ج	include (d)	يشمل/يتضمن
noodles (n)	مكرونة رفيعة	select (ed) show	
cylinder shape (n)	شكل اسطواني	pick (ed)	
leaves (n)	أوراق الشجر	pour (ed)	يصب
snow (n)	جليد/ثلج	roll (ed)	يبرم/يلفُ
branch (n)	غصن/فرع		יניט ויי איזייי
barramundi (n)	سمكة البارموندي	believe (d)	يصدق

Expressions & Prepositions

it's called	يُسَمِّي	go on the internet	يتصل بالانترنت
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	talk about	يتحدث عن
make notes	يقوم بعمل ملاحظات	refer to	يشيرإلى
It's a good opportunity t	إنهافرصة جيدة ان 0	(be) filled with	مملوءب
I'd prefer to	أفضلان	in + قخارمسا	باللغة الـ
look like	يشبه	roll (sth) into	يلف (شيء) على شكل
do a search	يبحث/يقوم بعملية البحد	cover (sth) in	يغطي شيئاب
decide on	يحدد/يختار	decorate (sth) with	يزين شيئاب

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Antonym / O	المضاد pposite
famous	مشهور	well-known	unknown	غير معروف
tasty	شهی	yummy	tasteless	بلاطعم
native	اصلی	original	foreign	اجنبي
include	يشمل	contain	exclude	يستبعد

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-an	تحول إسم المكان إلى جنسية	Australian
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	interesting
-tion	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	description
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	finally
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	decoration

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
come	ياتي	came	come
mean	يندي	meant	meant
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
think	عقتدي	thought	thought
write	یکتب	wrote	written

Language Notes

ْ مُلاحظات لغوية ﴿

1 recipe / prescription

- recipe هاده وصفة
 - Ex. She followed the recipe to make the chocolate cake.
- وصفة طبية prescription
- Ex. The doctor wrote a prescription for my cold.

من السهل أن : فعل بالمصدر + (be) easy to)

- من السهل أن : فعل بالمصدر + be) easy to •
- Ex. The recipe for this dish is easy to follow.

3 taste / tasty / tasteful

- يتذوق/له طعم (v) taste
 - Ex. I can't taste the soup. It's too hot.
 - يتذوق
- له طعم .This syrup tastes too sweet. له طعم
- tasty (adj) (المدك) محكاا غيغا
- Ex. She cooks very tasty dishes.
- Ex. Your office has very tasteful decorations.

4) search / research

- عملية البحث عن شيء (.n search (n عملية البحث عن شيء
- Ex. I did a search for famous dishes.
- بحث علمی وهو اسم غیر معدود research بحث علمی
- Ex. Scientists did a lot of research on the causes of cancer.

Check on Language Notes 🗸

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Mom got the _____ and made a nice dish.
 - a. recipe
- b. restart
- c. tasty
- d. scaled

- 2. It isn't not easy _____ the answer.
 - g. finds
- b. to find
- c. found
- d. to finds

- 3. The pizza is _____. I liked it.
 - a. taste
- b. tasteful
- c. tasty
- d. tasteless



Reading



SB Page (72)





Listen to Farah talking about researching a recipe. Then look at the recipe card and correct the mistakes on it.

Mom: What are you doing, Farah?

Farah: A research task(1) for school.

Mom: That's an interesting picture. What is it?

Farah : It's called Barramundi. It's a river fish⁽²⁾ from Australia.

Mom: Where does the name come from?

Farah: It's from a native(3) Australian language and

means "large-scaled (4) river fish".

Mom: So, the name describes(5) what it is.

Farah: Yes, and you can eat it in nearly every restaurant⁽⁶⁾ in the country. People usually eat

it with tomatoes and potatoes.

Mom: How did you do your research?

Farah: First, I decided on(7) a country.

Mom: And you picked Australia.

Farah: Yes, I didn't know anything about Australian food so I thought it would be interesting. Once I'd decided on the country, I went on the internet⁽⁸⁾ and did a search⁽⁹⁾ for famous dishes⁽¹⁰⁾. I looked at a few different websites so that I could check⁽¹¹⁾ the information. I then looked at the questions from the project and tried to find the answers. The next thing I did was make notes⁽¹²⁾. Then, I selected⁽¹³⁾

the information from my notes that I wanted to include(14) in my project.

Finally, I wrote the recipe card(15). Do you want to see it?

Recipe

Name of the dish: Barramundi

Origin of name: Australian

Ingredients: Chicken, tomatoes.

How is it cooked? Grilled



ا، مهمة بحثية

۲. سمکة نهریة ۳. أصلی/محلی

٤. كبيرة الحجم

ه. نصف

ر. مطعم

۷. اخترتُ

دخلت على النترنت

٩. قمت بالبحث

۱۰. أطباق مشهورة

اا. يفحص

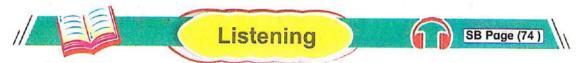
۱۲. یعمل ملاحظات

۱۳. اخترت

١٤. يشمل

ها. بطاقة الوصفة

Mom: Yes, please!





Narrator:1

Chinese boy:

At New Year in my country, we have a very big festival(1). At this time of year, we

always cook special noodles⁽²⁾ which are very, very long. In Chinese⁽³⁾, this dish is called "longevity⁽⁴⁾ noodles". It's a dish that we believe can help you to live a very long life! We say if you eat very long noodles at New Year, your life will be very long in the future!

Narrator:2

French girl

The Bûche de Noël is a traditional⁽⁵⁾ cake that we bake for Christmas in my country. We roll the cake into⁽⁶⁾ a cylinder shape⁽⁷⁾, then cover⁽⁸⁾ it in chocolate. We also often decorate ⁽⁹⁾ it with sweets which look like⁽¹⁰⁾ leaves⁽¹¹⁾, or we put sugar on the cake to look like snow ⁽¹²⁾, so the cake seems like the branch of a tree⁽¹³⁾ in winter!

Narrator 3:

Ethiopian boy:

My favorite celebration dish⁽¹⁴⁾ is called yebeg wot. It's a delicious meat dish that we cook during the vacation season⁽¹⁵⁾. We make it with lamb⁽¹⁶⁾ onions, tomatoes, garlic, butter, and special spices⁽¹⁷⁾. In my family, my grandma is the person who

usually cooks the yebeg wot. She also bakes a type of bread called injera, which she serves(18) next to it.

Narrator 4:

British girl

In my country, there's a popular celebration dish called Christmas pudding⁽¹⁹⁾. It's a dessert⁽²⁰⁾ which has lots of dried⁽²¹⁾ fruit, sugar, and spices in it. We boil it for a long time, then serve it hot with a sweet sauce. Sometimes you can find a coin⁽²²⁾ in your Christmas Pudding! People bake a coin into the pudding and the person who finds it will have good luck!

- ا. مهرجان
- ٦. مكرونة خاصة
- ٣. في اللغة الصينية
 - ٤. طول العمر
 - ە. تقلىدى
- ٦. يلف..على شكل
- ۷. شکل اسطوانی
 - ٨. يغطي
 - ۹. يزين
 - ۱۰. یشبه
 - اا. أوراق الشجر
 - ۱۲. الثلج
 - ۱۳. فرع الشجرة
 - ١٤. طبق احتفالي
- ها. موسم الأجازة
 - ١٦. لحم الضأن
 - ١٧. توابل
- ١٨. يقدم (طعام)
- ١٩. حلوي عيد الميلاد
 - .۲. حلوی
 - ۱۱. مجفف
 - قلمد ۲۱.



Listening



SB Page (75)



SB Page (75)

During the month of Ramadan in Egypt, Egyptians often eat a special⁽¹⁾ dessert⁽²⁾called⁽³⁾ qatayef with their families. Qatayef are a type of⁽⁴⁾ sweet pancake⁽⁵⁾ filled with⁽⁶⁾ nuts, or sometimes

chocolate, which are then put into oil⁽⁷⁾ and fried. Once the qatayef are ready to eat⁽⁸⁾ and on the table, people pour ⁽⁹⁾ syrup⁽¹⁰⁾ made from sugar over⁽¹¹⁾ them. I like to make qatayef at home; they taste⁽¹²⁾ much better⁽¹³⁾ than the ones you buy from shops.



ا. ممیز
 ٦. حلوی
 ع. نوع من
 ۲. مملوء ب
 ٧. موضوع بالزیت
 ٨. جاهز للأكل
 ٩. یصب
 ا. شراب
 ۱۱. فوق
 ۱۱. له مذاق
 ۱۱. اه مذاق
 ۱۱. اه مخاق
 ### Exercises on Vocabulary



Complete the following dialogue:

Judy and Leila are talking about their tavorite aish.	
Judy: Hi Leila. What's your favorite dish?	A
Leila: 1	
Judy : 2	?
Leila: The ingredients of koshari are rice, pasta, lentils and tomatoes	3.
Judy: 3	
Leila: For dessert, I have rice pudding.	
Judy: Do you know the recipe?	
Leila: @	
Judy: Let's cook this dish together.	
Leila: 6	



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

- 1.I found a very easy _____ for homemade pizza online.
 - a. search
- b. prescription
- c. recipe
- d. task

2. Your today is	to clean the kitchen,	and your brother	will water the flowers.
a. task	b. syrup	c. pancake	d. pudding
3.Koshari and Ful Med	ames are very	dishes in E	gypt.
a. talented	b. boiled	c. dried	d. famous
4. The cake needs seve	eraL , like f	lour, butter, and s	sugar.
 a. ingredients 	b. guests	c. celebrations	d. recipes
5.At this hotel, they	lunch at 4 p	om.	
a. save	b. serve	c. surf	d. sign
6.Sham El-Nessim is a	popular	that takes place	in the spring every
year.			
a. pasta	b. decoration	c. noodle	d. festival
7. The spaghetti was ve	ery and th	ie children liked it	very much.
a. tasteful	b. careful	c. tasty	d. friendly
8.We have	, fried and boiled chic	ken. Which of the	em do you like?
a. grilled	b. dried	c. scaled	d. interested
9. The vacation	is the busiest tim	e of the year for t	ravel.
a. reason	b. cylinder	c. season	d. longevity
10.My favorite dish for de	essert is		
a. noodles	b. pancakes	c. festivals	d. cards
11.I tried fru	it. It was so delicious		
a. grilled	b. fried	c. cooked	d. dried
12.Most bottles and can	dles have a	shape.	
a. cylinder	b. formal	c. final	d. foreign
13.After lunch, we had cl	nocolate cake	for dessert.	
a. noodle	b. opportunity	c. pudding	d. lamb
14.Ahmed Mekky is a far	nous actor. "Famous'	is the opposite o	f
a. popular	b. unknown	c. unsafe	d. delicious
15.We add the suffix "	" to the word	Australia to get	the name of the
nationality.		1.000	
a y	ban	cless	dfull
	Expressions & Pr	epositions	ng sign and
16.The child		before he ate it.	
a. baked	b. filled		d. decided
17.I need to	a search online for th		
a. make			

Unit 6 Food for thought

18. We need to do _____ on pollution for our school project.

a. task b. research c. search d. dessert

19. He decided ____ a place to spend the weekend.

a. on b. in c. to d. at

(3)

Punctuate the following sentences:

1.in china we always cook special noodles on weekends

2.what s your favorite celebration dish on christmas in egypt



Language

قواعد لغوية

عبارات ظرفية تدل على الزمان والمكان Adverb of time and place

- هي عبارات قصيرة تدل على توقيت ومكان وقوع الحَدَث أو مكان وجود شيء أو شخص. ومن أمثلة هذه العبارات:

Adverbials of time	ظروف الزمان
at this time of year	في هذا الوقت من العام
during the vacation season	أثناء موسم الأجازة
for a long time	لمدة طويلة
at new year	عيعجاا رماحاا قياعب عند
yesterday / tomorrow	بالأمس/غدا
in the morning	في الصباح

Adverbials of place	ظروف المكان
next to / into / on / beside	بجوار / داخل / على / بجوار
inside / outside	داخل/خارج
above / under	فوق/أسفل
here / there	هنا/هناك
at home and only and among the same	بالمنزل
upstairs / downstairs	في الطابق العلوي/السفلي

وتأتي هذه العبارات الظر فية في بداية أو نهاية الجملة:

Ex. At this time of year, we always go on holiday.

Ex. In Britain, people bake a coin into the pudding.

Exercises on Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1	called gatayef.	of Ramadan in Egypt,	Egyptians often	eat a special dessert
		b. During	c. Between	d. When
2	. Qatayef are a type of			
	oil and fried			
	a. beside	b. next	c. outside	d. into
3	. Once the qatayef are			
	made from sugar ove			
	a. on			
4	. I like to make qataye	f; they tast	e much better the	in the ones you buy
	from shops.			
	a. tomorrow	b. yesterday	c. at home	d. over there
		Bit by Bit Exe	rcises	
5	. You can't park your c	ar It's a "I	No parking" area.	
	a. after			
6	. When is the next mee			
	a. Tomorrow	b. Yesterday	c. Into the office	d. Inside the park
7	. When did you last see	e your best friend?		
	a. At school	b. At the cinema	c. Downstairs	d. Last Friday
8	. We spent our last we	ekend		1.11 1.31
	a. on Christmas	b. in Alexandria	c. after school	d. into the pudding
9	The City Center Mall	is locatedt	he river.	Mark the state of the control
	a. when	b. near	c. beside	d. during
10.	My sister will start wo			
20.20	a. during		c. after	d. above
11.	Do you live here? – N			
0000-20	a. there			
12.	There were two dishe	s the table	, but she took on	ly one.
	a. next	b. during	c. when	d. on
13.	I was tired, so I fell as	sleep the fi	lm.	
	a. during	b. on	c. while	d. from
14.	Mom cooked some ra	isinsthe po	ancake, which me	de it very delicious.
	a. from	b. between		

Unit 6 Food for thought

15. The women's bathroom is	there.	
a. soon b. over	c. between	d. during
16. The children's bedroom is	•	
a. upstairs	b. into the puo	dding
c. during the month	d. after the filr	m
17. The post office is the bank	and the school.	
a. next b. soon	c. between	d. when
18. My house is to the new par	k.	
a. tomorrow b. next	b. beside	d. inside
19. I didn't see my friend Alia	long time.	
a. into b. when	c. before	d. for
Complete the sentences with corr	ect form of the wor	d (s) in brackets:
1.The bank is over (here).		
2 (soon) the storm, my car b	oroke down.	
3.I went to Cairo (tomorrow		
4. There is a bank (over) the	50	hool
	mospitat and the sc	11001.
5.Let's go (beside) .It's hot.	1 2	
6.We go to the club (ever) of	A CONTRACT OF THE PARTY OF THE	
7.We have beans and eggs	(on) the morning.	
10	eaking	9
Ask and answer questions about I	how often you did	something:
	علك لشئ:	السؤال والجواب عن عدد مرات ف
Question -		Answer
- What's your favorite Egyptian	- My favorite Eg	yptian food is fish.
food?	دىً هي السمك	الأكلة المصرية المفضلة ل
ما هي الأكلة المصرية المفضلة لديك؟	Not-illa semblos	v hoda diev radale glob o
- How is it served?	- It's sometimes	grilled, fried, or
(Y) (1 (Y) (1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	cooked.	- Compather here? -
کیف یتم تقدیمہ؟	او مطبوخ	أحيانا يكون مشوي أو مقلي
- Where do you eat it?	- I eat it at home	e or in a restaurant.
این تتناوله؟ مطارفی طال میر	എ.	أتناوله في المنزل أو في مط
Do you eat it with something else?	- I eat it with rice	e and salad.
هل تتناوله مع شيء آخر ؟	Harris dans	أتناوله مع الارز والسلاطة.
The state of the s	The second second	

General Exercises (1) on Lessons 3&4

Gan	erantexerers	es on Less	ons 36:4
Complete the	following dialogue:		
A teacher and a	student are talking a	bout famous foods	around the world:
Teacher: Today,	we're going to learn a	bout famous foods fro	om around the world.
What's	your favorite food?"		
Ahmed : 0		3	
			?
Ahmed : Pizza is	very popular in Italy	and many other coun	tries.
Teacher: 8			?
Ahmed : Flour, to	omato sauce, sugar, v	vater and salt.	
Teacher: Can you	u tell us why pizza is o	a popular food?	
Ahmed : @			·
Teacher: Very go	od Ahmed. Thank you	ı very much.	
Ahmed : 6			, sir.
Read and com	plete the text with w	ords from the list:	
	dessert - at - recip	e - on - ingredients	
I like rice puddi	ng very much. The 🏽	for this	traditional dessert is
simple. The 🙆 💷	include ric	e, milk, and sugar. T	「his 🔞 is
often served 🙆	all occasion	ns. It's very delicious.	
Choose the co	rrect answer from a	, b, c or d:	
1. My mother	the cake with cre	eam and nuts.	
a. grilled	b. fried	c. decorated	d. poured
2. I or	n the internet to find in	nformation about my s	school project.
a. went	b. climbed	c. skipped	d. made
3. English is a very	popular	in many countries al	l over the world.
a. ingredient	b. dessert	c. pudding	d. language

4. Dr. Ahmed Zewail was a very _____ scientist all over the world.

c. scaled

b. famous

a. delicious

d. grilled

5. The waiter _____ hot water over the coffee grounds to make a delicious cup of coffee. a. picked b. underlined c. poured d. highlighted 6. As it was very cold outside I stayed home in the warm

	cup of conee.			
	a. picked	b. underlined	c. poured	d. highlighted
6.	As it was very cold or	ıtside I stayed home	in the warm	the
	fireplace.			
	a. inside	b. beside	c. next	d. after
7.	We usually go on vac	ation th	e summer.	
	a. under	b. upstairs	c. next to	d. during
8.	Let's spend the aftern	oon W	e could go to the	e cinema or the club.
	a. indoors	b. inside	c. outdoors	d. beside
9.	It's usually very hot_	that time	of the year.	
	a. while	b. at	c. of	d. when
0.	The cat is sitting	there, on the	couch.	
	a. over	b. here	c. for	d. where

Write a paragraph of (80 - 90) words on:

"Your favorite dessert"

(jbo) re(jbo) re(

للمفردات للمعردات Kev Vocabulary

	and y vocable and y		
container (n)	فترة تفتيح الزهور	bloom (n)	
compost (n)	بقايا القهوة	coffee grounds	
café (n)	حديقة محلية	local park (n)	
ceiling (n)	شفاطة (أنبوب بلاستيكي)	plastic straw (n)	
creamy (adj)	نفایات /فضلات	waste (n)	
herbs (n)	محينصة عاحم	recycled (adj)	
salty (adj)	بارد	cold (adj)	
soft (adj)	مقرمش	crispy (adj)	
sweet (adj)	حار	hot (adj)	
notice (d)	لذيذ	delicious (adj)	
	compost (n) café (n) ceiling (n) creamy (adj) herbs (n) salty (adj) soft (adj) sweet (adj)	container (n) قترة تفتيح الزهور قموم بقايا القهوة (compost (n) معايا القهوة (n) معادة محلية (reamy (adj) معاد تصنيعه (adj) معاد تصنيعه (adj) معاد تصنيعه (adj) عدار (adj) عدار (adj) soft (adj) sweet (adj) معاد تصنيعه (adj)	

Vocabulary		استمع إلى المفردات	المفردات الاضافية
coffee beans (n)	حبوب القهوة	strawberry (n)	فراولة
roof (n)	سطح	bright (adj)	لامخ/ساطخ
excited (adj)	متحمس	salad (n)	سلطة
fresh (adj)	طازج	fries (n)	بطاطس مقلية
coffee cup (n)	فنجان من القهوة	cheesecake (n)	كيكة الجبنه
olive oil (n)	زيت الزيتون	dishes (n)	وجبات/أطباق
bun (n)	قحدح	grilled (adj)	مشوى
tube (n)	أنبوبة	leftover (adj)	باقی/متبقی
nearby (adj)	قریب	taste (n)	قاغم/محك
smell (n)	رائحة	perfect (adj)	مثالی

Definitions

compost	سماد عضوی	old plant material used to grow new plants
coffee grounds	بقايا القهوة (تفل]	the leftover part of coffee beans
straw	ماصة/شفاطة	a thin paper or plastic tube you drink through
recycled	معاد تدویره	used again in a different way
waste	نفایا/بقایا	something not wanted or no longer used

Unit 6 Food for thought

Expressions & Prepositions

followed by the second of the	200 April 100 Ap	1
environmentally friendly at	in bloom صديق للبي	فى فترة التزهير
look more closely	on the ground ینظر عن ف	على الأرض
make no waste نفایات	set up	يۇسس/ينشا
a bit unhealthy ليل	pick <mark>up</mark> غیرصحیة	يلتقط
a few weeks later اسابيع	قحضرعدر light up	يشعل/يضئ
in a different way ختلفة	walk through بطريقةم	يسير عبر
in return	on the roof فى المقابرا	علىالسطح
یر light up	good for یضیء - ین	جيدل

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Antonym / Op	المضاد posite
possible	ممكن	probable	impossible	مستحيل
nearby	قريب	near - close	far - remote	عتدن
popular	مشهور	famous	unpopular	غير مشهور

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Wo	rd
-y	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	creamy - crispy	دسم/مقرمش
-ence	تحول الفعل إلى السمية	difference	إختلاف
ed -	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	recycled	معاد تصنيعه

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		Conjugations of Irregular Verbs ability	
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hurt	يؤذي	hurt dizado de la	hurt
give	عطي ser nuc. sed it wo	ecuup. Next umen even care. In	given
hang	علق قلدي	hung	hung
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
pay	يدفع	paid	paid

🏚 Language Notes 🅠 ملاحظات لغوية

1 roof / ceiling :

سطح المبنى (من الخارج) roof •

Ex.: I see a great view from the roof of our building.

سقف المبنى (من الداخل) ceiling •

Ex. In my room, I have a ceiling fan.

2) café - coffee

مقهی (مکان) café •

Ex.: I meet my friends at the café.

قهوة - مشروب coffee

Ex. I drink coffee in the morning.

3 person/ someone

الضمائر التي تعود على هذه الكلمات تكون جمع لاننا لا نعر ف جنس المتحدث.

Ex.: The person, who I met, was sad. They were crying.



Reading



SB Page (76)



"What's that?" asked Magdu.

"It's a coffee cup," said Sami. "And look, there's another over there."

Magdy and Sami were in their local park. Lituwas a beautiful day and the flowers were in bloom⁽¹⁾, but everywhere they looked there were used cups, plastic straws, and old food containers⁽²⁾. "Most of this trash comes from a nearby café," said Magdy. "Why don't we set up a café that makes almost no waste⁽³⁾?"

"No waste? How is that possible?".

"Well, take this coffee cup. Next time the person who used it wants a coffee, they can bring their own cup to the cafe. In return, they pay less for their coffee."That's a good idea."

"And instead of plastic straws⁽⁴⁾, our café can give paper straws that don't hurt the environment⁽⁵⁾." Sami's eyes lit up. "There are ways to reuse waste, too. Think of all



- ا. زهار
- ٦. وعاء
- ٤. ماصة بلاستيكية
 - السئة



those coffee grounds we can use them as compost⁽⁶⁾ to grow food. "Food that we serve in the café!

آ. سماد (عضوی)۷. صدیقة للبیئة۸. یلاحظ

٩. مكونات

The two friends were excited. They talked about their ideas all the way home.

Soon, Magdy and Sami bought an old building near the park. They cleaned it and painted it bright colors with environmentally friendly⁽⁷⁾ paint. They put in recycled glass windows and used old pieces of wood to make tables and chairs. They also hung lots of plants from the ceiling. On the roof, was a little garden for growing herbs, fruit, and vegetables.

A few weeks later, The Living Café opened. It was quiet at first, but then people started to notice⁽⁸⁾ it. They liked the way they could help save the planet with their morning coffee! More people came for lunch, and said the food tasted delicious and very fresh. They were excited to hear that some of the ingredients⁽⁹⁾ grew on the roof of the café. The Living Café quickly became the most popular café near the park.

One day, Magdy and Sami walked through the park again. This time, there weren't any used coffee cups on the ground. There were a few straws, but they were paper. Magdy picked one up and put it in the bin.

"Every little act helps!" he said, smiling.

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

- 1. Magdy and Sami were in their local
 - a. hospital
- b. school
- c. park
- d. station
- 2. What did Magdy and Sami use coffee grounds for?
- 3. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence.

Writing Skill

ممارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)

- 1. The two friends looked more closely at the trash.
- نظر الأصدقاء الاثنين إلى القمامة عن قرب.

2. They can bring their own cup to the café.

- يمكنهم أحضار الفنجان الخاص بهم للمقهى.

3. They also hung lots of plants from ceiling.

- قاموا أيضًا بتعليق النباتات من السقف.
- 3. Magdy and Sami were able to help the environment.
- 2- They used coffee grounds as a compost for growing food.

1-b. park

Answers:



Exercises on Vocabulary

Exercises on vocabulary
Complete the following dialogue:
Hanan is asking Mona about her favorite food
Hanan: Hi Mona. How are you?
Mona : Hi Hanan. I'm fine, thank you.
Hanan : 10?
Mona : My favorite food is burger.
Hanan: Burger! 2?
Mona: No, it isn't. It's a bit unhealthy.
Hanan: What about you?
Mona : 8
Hanan : Salad is healthy. @?
Mona: I like it with cucumber, onion, and cheese.
Hanan: What's your favorite dessert?
Mona : 6
Read and complete the text with words from the list:
environment - straws - reuse - compost - roof
Magdy and Sami are friends. They were in their local park. They wanted to set up
a café with no waste. There are ways to 🚯 waste. Instead of plastic
the café can use paper straws that don't hurt the 1
They can use the coffee grounds to use them as 🙆, to grow food
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Kon Veedbulger 9 SD E
Key Vocabulary & SB Exercises
1. We use a food to keep our food during the picnic.
a. trash b. container c. ground d. flower
2. I like to eat snacks like chips.
g soft b crispu c uglu d dirtu

3. My mother puts a lot of salt in the dish. It's too _____.

c. salty

d. sweet

b. crispy

a. creamy

My friends vol	lunteered in the local	to plant	more trees.
a. cinema	b. park	c. hospital	d. station
5. It was a beau	tiful day and the flowers	were in	. 977
a. groom	b. bloom	c. broom	d. food
6. He looked up	at the of the	e room while thinkin	g about the problem
a. ceiling	b. roof	c. soil	d. trash
7. My father	up a new café	in our town.	
a. made	b. got	c. had	d. set
8. I	my father's picture on t	he wall.)
a. took	b. hurt	c. light	d. hung
9. I like salad ve	ry much. It's my favorite		
a. fish	b. dish	c. paper	d. subject
10. I like cheesec	ake. It's so	- •	
a. bad	b. ugly	c. delicious	d. dirty
11. Coffee	are the leftover	part of coffee beans	š.
a. flowers	b. grounds	c. cups	d. bags
12. A "	" means a thin paper	or plastic tube you	drink through .
a. dish	b. chair	c. straw	d. table
13. A "	" is an old plant mate	erial used to grow ne	ew plants.
a. flower	b. ground	c. compost	d. company
14. A lot of people	usually have drinks and	d eat meals at	
a. hospitals	b. cafés	c. markets	d. mosques
15. My sister alwa	ys buys at	the bakery.	
a. pens	b. buns	c. books	d. bins
16. There was a li	ghtfrom the	he ceiling.	
a. inviting	b. hanging	c. throwing	d. talking
17. My little brothe	er his finge	r with a knife.	
	b. ate		
18. I like fries, the	y are very	· · · ·	e in the contract of the contr
a. creamu	b. crispu	c. dirtu	d soft

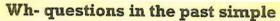
Review on Unit 6

Key Vocab	ulary		المفردات الرئيسية
apartment (n)	شقة سكنية	dessert (n)	تحلية
meal (n)	وجبة	special (n)	خاص- مميز
oven (n)	فرن	waiter (n)	جرسون/نادل
restaurant (n)	محصه	serve (d)	يقدم طعام- يخدم
snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	chickpea paste (n)	معجون الحمص
spices (n)	توابل	chipsi mayai (n)	شيبسي ماياي (أكلة تنزانية)
menu (n)	قائمة طعام	fries (n)	بطاطس مقلية
sweet potato (n)	بطاطا	eggah (n)	عَجُه
tomatoes (n)	طماطم	basbousa (n)	بسنوسة
cucumber (n)	خيار	baklawa (n)	بقلاوة
fish kebab (n)	كباب السمك	falafel (n)	فلافل
bloom (n)	فترة تفتيح الزهور	container (n)	وعاء
coffee grounds	بقايا القهوة	compost (n)	سماد عضوی
local park (n)	حديقة محلية	café (n)	مقهى
plastic straw (n)	شفاطة (أنبوب بلاستيكى)	ceiling (n)	سقف مبنى
waste (n)	نفایات /فضلات	creamy (adj)	دُسِم (به قشطة)
recycled (adj)	معاد تصنيعه	herbs (n)	أعشاب
crispy (adj)	مقرمش	salty (adj)	مالح
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	soft (adj)	ناعم/طری
recipe (n.)	وصفة طعام	sweet (adj)	حلو المذاق
research (n.)	بحث علمي	notice (d)	يلاحظ
task (n.)	مهمة عمل	festival (n.)	مهرجان
ingredients (n.)	مکونات hurt	celebration dish (n.)	طبقيتم عمله في الاحتفالات
large-scaled fish	سمكة قشرية كبير الحجم	tasty (adj.)	لذيذ الطعم
native (adj)	اصلی	opportunity (n.)	فرصة
main course (n)	الوجبة الرئيسية	grilled (adj.)	مشوي
starters (n)	مُ قبلات		9



Language

قواعد لغوية



ا– الماضي البسيط يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل أي المصدر مضاف اليه (d/ed/ied)

- يضاف (ed) لمعظم الأفعال.
- اذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e) نضع (d)
- اذا انتهی الفعل بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساکن نحذفها ونضع (ied)

Ex. Adam watched TV yesterday.

Ex. They studied English last week.

📆 ويوجد أفعال شاذة مثل

buy	bought	يشتري
sell	sold	يبيئ

المصدر بدون اضافات (didn't + inf) المصدر بدون اضافات - Ex. Adam sent the letter to Suzy. Ex. Adam didn't send the letter to Suzy.

٣ – في حالة تكوين السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد بمعنى (هل) وتكون الأجابة بـــ (Yes / No)يكون الشكل كالأتي

?....مصدر + فاعل + did + أداة استفهام

Ex. Where did you live?

- I lived in Minia.

Ex. How did they go to hospital?

- They went to hospital on foot.

عبارات ظرفية تدل على الزمان والمكان عبارات ظرفية تدل على الزمان والمكان

– هي عبارات قصيرة تدل على توقيت ومكان وقوع الحَدَثِ أو مكان وجود شِيءٍ أو شِخصٍ. ومن أمثلة هذه العبارات:

Adverbials of time ظروف الزمان at this time of year في هذا الوقت من العام during the vacation season أثناء موسم الأجازة for a long time لمدة طويلة edd, and soft lamb to the at new year عند بداية العام الجديد yesterday / tomorrow aggod branch بالأمس/غدا in the morning في الصباح Adverbials of place ظروف المكان next to / into / on / beside بجوار/داخل/على/بجوار inside / outside داخل/خارج above / under فوق/أسفل here / there هنا/هناك at home بالمنزل upstairs / downstairs في الطابق العلوى/السفلي



Lessons 1&2

My favorite food is pizza. I love the melted cheese very much. I usually get pizza from my favorite local pizza shop. Sometimes, I make pizza at home with my family. It's always fun to experiment with different toppings and sauces. My favorite dessert is ice cream. My favorite flavors are chocolate, vanilla, and strawberry. I usually eat ice cream after dinner. Sometimes, I get ice cream cones from the ice cream shop.

Lessons 3&4

My favorite dessert is chocolate cake. It is soft, sweet, and full of rich chocolate flavor. I love the way it melts in my mouth. Sometimes, I enjoy it with a spoonful of vanilla ice cream on the side. The cold ice cream mixes perfectly with the warm cake. I also like to add some raisins on top for fun. Whenever there is a birthday or a special occasion, chocolate cake is always there. It makes me happy and brings back good memories. Eating a slice of chocolate cake is like having a little piece of joy!

Al Azhar Exercises

My favorite dish is koshari. It's a delicious Egyptian meal with rice, pasta, lentils, and crispy onions. I love the mix of flavors. There's a spicy sauce that makes it even more tasty. Sometimes, I add vinegar for a good taste. Koshari is a great choice for lunch or dinner. It's also very cheap, so I can enjoy it often.

General Exercises on Unit 6

"Fettah" is a traditional Egyptian dish enjoyed during Eid Al-Adha. This celebration meal consists of layers of rice, bread, and soft lamb or beef. Families gather to share this special dish, which express unity and happiness. The recipe of "Fettah" is easy. Families usually come together during Eid Al Adha and eat "Fettah". It is a healthy meal but we shouldn't eat too much of it. Eid Al-Adha in Egypt is a time of joy and happiness.

Al Azhar Exercises

A: Listening



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

					,
	- ×			ستماع آذر الكتاب	نص الا
1.Uncle	Ali is a/an				
a. tea	cher	b. doctor	c. engineer	d. mechanic	
2.Uncle	Ali goes to wo	ork			
a. by	car	b. on foot	c. by bus	d. by train	
	,	B: Language	Functions		
Oom	plete the foll	owing dialogue:			
		AN CHARLES NOT THOUGH A MANAGED			
Ali is as	king Ashraf	about his father			
Ali	: What is yo	our father's name?			
Ashraf	: 1	***************************************			
Ali	: 2				?
Ashraf					
Ali	: 🔞				?
Ashraf		e hobby is playing ch			
		C: Us		-	
3		0.08	age		
🚱 Choo	se the corre	ct answer from a, b	, c or d:		
1.What is	the main	in koshari?			
a. cou	rse	b. meal	c. ingredient	d. starter	
2.They s	erve the best	in that café	18 (8) 970 I		
a coffe	e	b cafe		d spices	
3.I don't li	ike the pizza .	ार्गकाः. all.	TOOT)		
a on		b for	c at	d in	
4.I live in	a big	in Cairo .			
a. over	1	b. apartment	c. meal	d. meat	

5.Breakfast, lunch an	d dinner are		
a. meals	b. countries	c. waiters	d. desserts
	D: Reading Con	nprehension	
Read the following	ng passage and answ	ver the followin	g questions:
Luxor. Mona loves <u>her valued</u> with them to the library Mona often helps her gr Mona and her grandmot	very much. Mona has m to read books. Mona's andmother in the kitche her enjoy watching TV	nany friends at s favorite subject en. She usually	with her grandmother in chool. She always goes is English. After school, sleeps at half past nine. ave a happy life.
A. Answer the follo	owing questions:		
What does Mor	na do after school?		
3.When does Mor	na sleep?		
B. Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b,	, c or d:	
a. school	randmother live in b. Cairo refers to	c. Luxor	d. kitchen
a. Mona	b. library	c. English	d. grandmother
6. They enjoy wat	NO. NO. ACCOUNT.	o. English	a. granamotrici
	b. in the afternoon	c. at night	d. in the evening
	wing words to make r		
1.bought - snacks - <u>Su</u>	IZU - some. ns - filled. ouse - cinema - the.	ct answer fro	97700
	E: Writi	ng	
6 Write a paragraph	of FIVE (5) sentence	nt ni s on: afoo o	(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)
	(Your favorite	dish)	<u> 5Σ2Ιπ »</u>

General Exercises on Unit 6

A: Listening Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

				بتماع آخر الكتاب	ص الاس
1.Ma	riam's routine is .	eve	ry day.		
a. t	he same	b. different	c. difficult	d. funny	
2.Ma	riam has a friend	called		24	
a. N	Mona	b. Ola	c. Dina	d. Basant	
3.She	goes to school	by			
a. t	rain	b. bus	c. car	d. plane	
4.Mai	riam and her frier	nd sometimes	toge	ther.	
a. v	valk	b. listen to music	c. sleep	d. swim	
		B: Language	Functions		
② Co	mplete the follo	wing dialogue:		×	
Toka	is asking Laila (about her visit to As	wan		
Toka	: When did you	u go to Aswan?			
Laila	: 🗿			***************************************	
Toka	: 2				
Laila			ν.		
Toka	: Who did you	go with?			
Laila	: 1	- Hain O			
Toka	. How was you	ruip:			
Laila	: 🚳	(a) **			•
Toka	: 6				······
Laila	: I saw a lot of	things.			
Re	ad and complet	e the text with word	s from the list	: 1° ×	
	ро	ol - swimming - at -	Cairo - friend	S	
On Fr	iday mornings, I	have tennis lessons	s at the sports	center 🕧	10
		🙆in the aft		ith my 🔞	
There is	a big swimming	in the ce	nter.		

C: Reading Comprehension



Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egyptians love football. Football was already popular in Ancient Egypt. When there is an important match going on, all the coffee shops are filled with lots of people drinking Egyptian coffee or tea. There are always people following the matches.

Mohamed Salah is my favorite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a <u>fast</u> runner and clever footballer. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He gives money to help poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to <u>his</u> fans. He hasn't got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

1. What is the main id	dea of the passage?		
A. Answer the following questions: I. What is the main idea of the passage? I. Who does Salah talk to? I. Do you think Salah is a kind player? Why? I. The underlined pronoun "his" refers to			
3. Do you think Salah	n is a kind player? Wi	hy?	
B. Choose the cor	rect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
a. poor people	b. Salah	c. his father	d. fans
5. "Fast" is the oppos	ite of		
			d. friendly
6. One of Salah's hob	bies is playing	games.	
a. boxing	b. tennis	c. video	d. basketball
	D: Vocabulary	and Structure	
6 Choose the cor	rect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
1. To make pasta, you	u shouldthe	water well before	adding it.
a. boil	b. oil	c. fry	d. serve
2. English is an intern	ational _{iž +} .	ete that text w	and the second
a. meal	b. menu	c. snack	d. language
3. He looked up at the	e of the roon	n while thinking ab	out the problem .
a. ceiling	b. roof	c. room	d. trash
4. My father	up a new company i	n the New Capital	City.
a. make	b. roof	c. problem	d. set

Unit 6 Food fo	r thought		
5.Put the trash in the	e and take	e it out, please.	
a. ban	b. pen	c. bin	d. pin
6.I met my friend	the sports c	enter last Friday.	
a. of	b. on	c. at	d. for
7 did you l	nave your last math	lesson?	
a. What	b. When	c. Who	d. Which
8.He fell asleep	the film		
a. while	b. during	c. when	d. at
9 did Adan	n do after he saw tl	ne accident?	
a. What	b. When	c. Who	d. Which
10.When you	ur father's birthday	?	
a. do	b. did	c. was	d. were
6 Complete the se	ntences with the co	orrect form of the v	vord (s) in brackets:
1.Where	(was) you last we	ek?	
2(What)	did you go to Cair	o? - Last week.	
3.How(0	do) you go to scho	ol? - I went by car.	
4.I went to Cairo	(tomorrow	·)·	
	E	Writing	
Write a paragro	aph of (80-90) wor	ds on:	
	"My celei	bration food"	مجاب عنه قبل الاحتبار)
	Bir CR 1		
7 8.	'KE	-Birthon	
, 11, 17, 17, 17, 17, 17, 17, 17, 17, 17		* · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

Review (B)

Key Vocabulary

المفر دات الرئيسية

water world (n)	عالم المياه	packaging (n)	 تغلیف
solution (n)	حل	impact on (n)	 تاثیر
two thirds (n)	ثلثي	eat green	يتناول الطعام الصحى
storm (n)	قفصاد	mash (ed)	يهرس
climate change (n)	تغير المناخ	act (ed)	يتصرف
spicy (adj)	حار – متبل	face (d)	يواجه
transporting (n)	تقل		



Reading



SB Page (80)







Read the text quickly. Which of the problems in the photos are mentioned in text:







Water world

In some countries around the world, not having enough clean water is a big problem. In fact, almost two thirds of the world's population face water scarcity at some point during the year.

This means having to walk a long way to find clean, fresh water, or not having enough to drink, cook, and wash.

Not having enough water can have a bad effect on people's health. Our bodies need a lot of water to stay healthy, but dirty water can make us very ill.

People who need water to earn money also suffer when there isn't enough. For example, farmers need water to grow crops. Without it, they don't have enough. crops to sell.

Some research shows that the problem of water scarcity is getting worse because of climate change. We must act now to find a solution!



Listening



SB Page (81)



Listen to the dialog. What does it mean to "eat green"?

Eating green

Hana: What are you doing, Menna?

Menna: I'm reading an article about ways to "eat green".

Hana: You mean ways to eat more green vegetables?

Menna: Hana, no, not exactly. Eating green is about making food choices that

don't harm the environment.

Hana : Oh, I see.

Menna: Our food choices have a big impact on the environment, you see. They

can either increase, or help to reduce, climate change.

Hana : Can you give me an example?

Menna: Sure, no problem. Choosing local produce can make a big difference. If

you buy food that is grown near to where you live, it doesn't need to travel

long distances to get to you.

Hana: That's true. I guess driving or flying food around the world causes pollution.

Menna: Exactly. Secondly, try to buy food that has little or no packaging. Or,

check that the packaging is made from something like paper or cardboard.

Plastic packaging is the worst!

Hana: OK, got it.

Menna: Another thing you can do is to only buy as much as you need. Throwing

away lots of food is a huge waste.

Hana: That's all really good advice". I will think more carefully about my food

choices in future. Thanks, Menna!

l

istening Material

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع الواردة في وحدات كتابBit 🍪 Bit

Unit 0

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Playing sports is fun! You run, jump, and throw. It helps you get strong and healthy. You can play with friends and make a team. Sports teach you to win and lose. It's good to try different sports to find what you like best.

Exercises on Unit 60

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Volunteering at a community garden is a great way to help your community and learn new things. You can work with other people to grow fresh fruits and vegetables, which is good for your health and the environment. You can also learn about gardening, meet new friends, and feel good about helping others.

Unit @

Al Azhar Exercises

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The sun

The sun is a big, bright star that gives us light and heat. It's very important for life on Earth. Without the sun, our planet would be dark and cold. The sun is so hot that it can melt metal. The earth goes round the sun once a day.

Exercises on Unit @

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My Friend Sarah

Sarah is my best friend. Every day, she wakes up early to go for a walk and then enjoys a healthy breakfast. She is interested in reading. On weekends, Sarah loves to go to the local public library to read a book. She dreams of writing her own book one day in the future.

Unit 6

Al Azhar Exercises

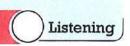
1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Raneem is 16 years old. She lives with her family in Paris. She came to Egypt to spend her holiday. She travelled to Aswan and watched the High Dam. The food there was delicious. She bought a postcard for her sister Riham. She enjoyed her holiday there.

Exercises on Unit 69

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I'm Malek. I have got two brothers and three sisters. My father is an engineer. My mother is a teacher. My father and mother work day and night to help us live a happy life. They bring us up to love our country, Egypt. We live in a nice flat in Cairo.



Unit @

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Heba. I'm in prep school. Today is Friday. We don't go to school. I'm reading a nice book. My father is watching TV.

Exercises on Unit @

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Salwa. I work as a nurse in a big hospital. I am always busy all day. I work in the children's ward. I'm looking forward to going home to have some rest. I'm very tired today.

Unit 6

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I'm Hatem. I want be eco-friendly. I turn off the lights. I have a shower not a bath to save water. I put my trash in the recycling bin. I ride my bike to school

Exercises on Unit 6

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Being eco-friendly means taking care of the environment and helping to protect our planet. You can save energy at home. You should turn off the lights when you aren't using them. You can use little water. Take short showers to save water. Turn off the taps to save water. Don't throw plastic bottles away, you can recycle them.

Unit 6

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Uncle Ali is an engineer. He works in A big company in Cairo. He goes to work by bus. He has 3 children

Exercises on Unit @

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Mariam is 13 years old. Her routine is the same every day. She goes to school by bus. She has a friend called Ola. They sometimes listen to music together.



Helo! Beyond Words

Answer Key to st. Prep.



1^{st.} Term

إجابات كتاب الصف الأول الإعدادى

الفصل الدراسي الأول

للاستعلام وإبداء الأراء والاقتراحات -الإدارة : تليفون : 25880102





Lessons 1 & 2

Check on Lang. Notes (p.19)

- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. usina
- 2. c. tirina
- 3. c. cooking
- 4. d. of
- 5. a. no

(p.21)

- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. b. noun
- 2. b. adverb
- 3. b. preposition
- 4. b. noun
- 5. d. pronoun

Vocabulary (p.23:25) Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I played in a tournament.
- 2. Yes, they did.
- 3. I helped in the community.
- 4. I volunteered to help in the community.
- 5. Did you enjoy the vacation?

2. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. b. talented
- 2. b. tiring
- 3. b. do
- 4. c. make
- 5. d. amazing
- 6. b. wrappers
- 7. d. At
- 8. d. safe
- 9. b. to buu
- 11. d. tiring
- 10. b. coach
- 12. b. tournament
- 13. c. hand
- 14. a. imagine
- 15. a. volunteered 16. b. vacation
- 17. d. activities
- 18. b. meeting
- 19. a. neighbors 20. a. scored
- 21. c. noticed
- 22. c. noisu
- 23. b. im-
- 24. c. fun
- 26. c. part
- 25. a. nervous
- 28. b. for
- 27. a. best
- 29. c. instead
- 30. b. up

Language (p.27:29)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c. did
- 2. a. didn't go
- 3. d. did
- 4. c. didn't offer
- 5. d. didn't you go 6. d. was
- 7. b. started
- 8. d. said
- 9 c do
- 10. a. was 12. b. tried
- 11. c. was
- 14. a. Did
- 13. d. felt
- 16. d. did
- 15. c. were
- 18. c. taught
- 17. b. started 19. d. learned
- 20. c. Could
- 21. d. had
- 22. c. yesterday
- 23. a. had
- 24. a. Were
- 25. b. didn't
- 26. d. did

2. Read and correct:

- 1. go
- 2. didn't hurry /couldn't hurry
- 3. did
- 4. didn't follow
- 5. know who won 6. built
- 7. had
- 8. didn't catch
- 9. was
- 10. did
- 11. said
- 12. do
- 13. read
- 15. could
- 14. ago 16. had
- 17. yesterday
- 18. went

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I helped in the community garden.
- 2. I collected the litter.
- 3. Where did you take the litter?
- 4. How often did you go there?
- 5. Sure.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the list

- 1. great
- 2. activities
- 3. taught
- 4. tournament

3. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. workshop 2. a. Imagine
- 3. b. talented 4. c. AI
- 5. c. tournament 6. c. talented
- 7. c. tried 8. d. have
- 9. a. went 10. d. Were
- 11. a. used 12. a. planted

4. Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. was
- 2. were
- 3. have
- 4. was
- 5. was
- 6. Did

Lessons 3 & 4 Check on Lang. Notes (p.36)

- Choose the correct answer:

- - 1. d. the dead 2. c. care
 - 4. b. in 3. b. dailu

Vocabulary (p.38:40) Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. d. Catacombs 2. c. protect
- 3. a. archaeologists
- 4. b. bank 5. a. get
- 7. b. obelisk 6. c. everyday
- 8. a. lazy
- 9. c. statue
- 10. c. helpful
- 11. b. monuments
- 12. c. solution
- 13. d. solve

- 14. c. lazu
- 15. a. prayed
- 16. c. smart
- 17. b. friendly
- 18. c. tourists
- 19. b. information
- 20. d. skill
- 21. b. present
- 22. c. unfortunately
- 23. a. effect
- 24. b. edit
- 25. c. Recycling 26. b. shape
- 27. c. at
- 28. a. after
- 29. c. online
- 30. a. banks

Language (42:44)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d. never 2. b. manu
- 3. b. sometimes 4. b. usually did
- 5. b. ever
- 6. c. not often
- 7. b. always
- 8. d. never
- 9. c. was never 10. d. often
 - 12. g. never
- 11. c. read
- 13. a. you often 14. a. did
- 15. c. taught
- 16. a. stau
- 17. a. always friendly
- 18. b. usuallu
- 19. c. volunteered
- 20. c. was
- 21. a. often helped

2. Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. never
- 2. alwaus
- 3. often
- 4. often
- 5. was always
- 6. always
- 7. usuallu visited 8. often
- 9. was never
- 10. Did
- 11. couldn't
- 12. did
- 13. share
- 14. never
- 15. Were

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Yes, I did.
- 2. I played football.
- 3. How often did you play football?
- 4. Where did you play football?
- 5. I played with my friends.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the list

- 1. monuments
- 2. temples
- 3. traveled
- 4. obelisk
- 3. Choose the correct answer:
 - 1. c. statue
- 2. a. walls

1st prep. Answers

- 3. b. solution 4. b. technology
- 5. b. -ful 6. a. used
- 7. b. read 8. a. played
- 9. c. did 10. d. never

4 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. saw
- 2. was often
- 3. wear 4. was 5. did

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary (p.52:55)



1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. My favorite sport is table tennis.
- 2. In the sports club.
- 3. Who is your favorite player?
- 4. What was her greatest achievement?
- 5. I completely agree.

2. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. g. achievements
- 2. a. opponents
- 3. c. victory 4. d. champion
- 5. c. stop 6. c. come
- 7. g. gward 8. c. noun
- 9. d. predict
- 10. b. informal
- 11. a. include 12. d. adjective
- 13. c. ignore 14. d. they
- 15. b. focus 16. b. rising
- 17. d. Table tennis
- 18. a. dream
- 19. c. ranking 20. b. age
- 21. d. Instead 22. a. qualities
- 23. b. achieve 24. a. opponent
- 25. c. achievement
- 26. b. improve
- 27. a. amazed 28. b. talent
- 29. a. sportspeople

30. a. connect 31. c. practice

Al Azhar Exercises

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c. strong
- 2. a. team

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I wrote a story.
- 2. By using AI.
- 3. What is AI?

Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d:

- 1. c. competition 2. a. succeeded
- 3. d. hero
- 4. b. opponent
- 5. d. from

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- 1.Traveling around the world.
- I can climb high mountains, swim in warm oceans, and eat yummy foods from different places.
- 3. Yes, I do.
- 4. c. people
- 5. b. interesting

5. Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

- 1. We had a lot of fun.
- 2. What did you do last summer?
- 3. Why is it a special ancient building?
- 4. I helped out in my family's workshop.

General Exercises on Unit (1)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a. grow their own food
- 2. c. vegetables
- 3. b. environment
- 4. c. gardening

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. We are going to visit the Pyramids.
- 2. They're in Giza.
- 3. How old are they?
- 4. What are they made of?
- 5. We can see the Sphinx.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the list:

- 1. volunteered
- 2. picked
- 3. recycling
- 4.was

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- We can build sandcastles, swim in the cool water, and play with our friends.
- 2. We can wear sunscreen, drink lots of water, and take breaks from the heat.
- 3. How to spend a great summer vacation.
- 4. b. park
- 5. b. inside
- 6. b. Reading

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b. temple
- 2. a. bury
- 3. d. monuments 4. b. champion
- 5. c. Catacombs 6. b. ago
- 7. d. Last
- 8. c. went
- 9. a. traveled
- 10. b. were

6. Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. do
- 2. never
- 3. Were
- 4. yesterday

Unit 2

Lessons 1 & 2

Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. b. in
- 2. a. at
- 3. c. in
- 4. b. on
- 5. b. me a gift
- 6. c. Maybe



Exercises on Lesson 1

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Yes, I did
- 2. Where did it take place?
- 3. How was the reception?
- 4. I loved the music and the dance very much.
- 5. the groom was wearing a traditional galabeya.

2- Choose the correct answer:

- c. bride
 d. groom
 c. guests
 d. b. contract
 a. reception
 c. cake
 b. dress
 d. wedding
 a. photographer
 b. outfit
 c. sign
 b. outfit
 c. .al
 d. necklace
 d. c. relatives
- 15. a. windows 16. c. fantastic
- 17. b. modern18. b. take19. d. up20. b. did

3- Rearrange the following words:

- The groom looked fantastic in his traditional galabeya.
- 2. What was your favorite part of the reception?



1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b. my
- 2. d. their

3. a. its	4. c. your
5. a. dad's	6. a. His
7. c. grandparents'	8. b. Fluffy's
9. d. Her	10. c. your
11. b. bride's	12. d. my
13. b. our	14. a. her
15. c. their	16. b. mine
17. d. Its	18. d. cousin's
19. c. my	20. d. their

2- Complete the sentences:

1. my	2. parents'
3. my	4. yesterday's
5. girls'	6. children's
7. Its	8. his

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Yes. I'm free.
- 2. Would you like to come with me?
- 3. What can we do there?
- 4. No, we don't.
- 5. Yes, you can.

2- Read and complete

1. guests	2. my
3. reception	4. outfits

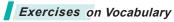
3- Choose the correct answer:

1. b. necklace	2. d. bracelet
3. a. relatives	4. c. media
5. a. windows	6. b. my
7. d. their	8. c. its
9. b. children's	10. d. sister's
Lessons 3 & 4	

Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

1. b. Whose	2. c. nearby
3. b. few	4. c. was
Vocabulary	



1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Yes, but you need to be careful.
- 2. There are some rules to follow.

- 3. Use a well-known website.
- 4. What else should I do?
- 5. Thank you very much.

2- Choose the correct answer:

1. c. website	2. a. true
3. d. share	4. b. public
5. c. alone	6. a. online

7. c. motorbike

8. b. environmentally

o. b. environmentally	
9. c. skiing	10. cation
11. d. safe	12. b. prefix
13. c. address	14. b. intercom
15. d. date	16. a. account
17. c. go	18. b. for
19. b. follow	20. d. in

Language

Exercises on Language

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. Can	2. c. Will
3. b. Can	4. d. Can
5. a. Will	6. d. Can
7. c. Can	8. c. Will
9. c. Can	10. a. Will
11. d. Can	12. b. Will

2- Complete the sentences:

1. Will	2. Can
3. Will	4. Can

5. Will

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Would you like to sell it online?
- 2. Do you often buy and sell things online?
- 3. Yes, it's very easy.
- 4. Yes, of course.
- 5. Send them to me and I'll post them.

Answers

2- Read and complete

- 1. apartment 2. well-known
- 3. personal 4. address

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. remember 2. a. share
- 3. d. rules 4. b. public
- 5. a. online 6. c. alone 7. b. safe 8. d. Will
- 9. a. Can 10. c. Will

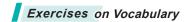
Lessons 5 & 6

Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. d. five-day holiday
- 2. b. 20-pound tickets
- 3. a. buying 4. c. special
- 5. b. private 6. a. borrow
- 7. c. sometimes

Vocabulary



1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I made a friend online
- 2. How did you meet her?
- 3. Do you talk to her often?
- 4. I think they're different.
- 5. Thank you.

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. website 2. a. Chatting
- 3. c. Photography 4. b. challenge
- 5. d. Communication 6. c. in-
- 7. b. emoji 8. d. forum
- 9. c. friendship 10. a. -ful
- 11. b. offline 12. d. specific
- 13. c. comments
- 14. a. understanding
- 15. b. misunderstanding
- 16. d. meaningful
- 17. a. face-to-face 18. c. handled
- 19. d. made 20. b. common
- 21. b. went 22. a. feel

3- Rearrange the following words:

- 1. I decided to take a five-day holiday.
- 2. My friend and I have a lot in common.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. What's the matter? / What happened?
- 2. Congratulations!
- 3. How was your exam?
- 4. I'm so happy for you!
- 5. Have a great day!

2- Read and complete the text with words from the list

- 1. close 2. nature
- 3. Photography 4. challenge

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. a. comments 2. c. go
- 3. b. there4. d. over5. c. focus6. a. make

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. The sun 2. b. The moon

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I'm coming with you.
- 2. I won't.
 - 3. Let's go

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c. bride 2. g. modern
- 3. d. contract 4. b. in-
- 5. d. Communication

4- Read the following, then answer the questions:

- Science because he loves doing experiments.
- He plays with his friends in the playground.
- 3. Teachers
- 4. b. 8:00 am
- 5. c. take part
- 6. b. At the chess club

5- Reorder the following words:

- I was having lunch at my grandparents'.
- 2. Whose family has a car and a motorbike?
- 3. My cousin Amira is married to Auman.
- 4. I sat at a table with my two brothers.

General Exercises on Unit (2)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b. To read books.
- 2. c. To the library
- 3. a. Adventure.
- 4. c. To write her own book.

2- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Yes, I did
- 2. What did you see there?
- 3. Did you learn anything?
- 4. I want to go too
- 5. Have a great day!

3- Read and complete the text with words from the list:

- 1. guests
- 2. celebrating
- 3. delicious
- 4. her

4- Read the following, then answer the questions:

- 1. He felt happy.
- 2. The iconic Tower.
- 3. Yes. because it's really fantastic.
- 4. b. A fun day
- 5. b. the New Capital City
- 6. a. narrow

5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b. photographer
- 2. d. emoji
- 3. a. public
- 4. d. -ion
- 5. a. apartment
- 6. c. tomorrow's
- 7. c. mine
- 8. a. teachers'
- 9. c. their
- 10. b. Will

6- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. my

- 2. parents'
- 3. Will
- 4. yours

Answers



Lessons 1 & 2

Check on Lang. Notes - Choose the correct answer:

- - 1. d. a&b are correct 2. d. journal
 - 3. c. much 4. c. spent

Vocabulary



1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Why are you going to the cinema?
- 2. To watch the new movie.
- 3. I'm going to the club.
- 4. Are you in the school football team?
- 5. Thanks a lot.

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. b. organize 2. a. journal
- 3. b. recipes 4. b. free
- 5. b. first aid 6. b. does
- 7. a. skills 8. c. spend
- 9. d. help 10. c. chef
- 11. a. games 12. a. pool
- 13. b. parks 14. b. captain
- 15. c. mall 16. d. irregular
- 17. d. un-18. a. take
- 19. c. focus 20. d. for
- 21. c. to 22. a. do

3- Rearrange:

- 1. How do you learn new skills?
- 2. I'm meeting a friend at the cinema.
- 3. We like to go for walks in nature.

Language



1- Choose the correct answer from a. b, c or d:

- 1. d. going
- 2. b. am
- 3. a. walking
- 4. c. isn't
- 5. d. are running 6. d. doing
- 7. b. is
- 8. c. are playing
- 9. a. are making 10. b. am thinking

- 11. b. am working 12. b. is staying
- 13. a. think 14. c. is she saying
- 15. c. are playing 16. c. taking
- 17. c. are sleeping 18. b. drinking
- 19. b. are building 20. b. Are

2- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. is cooking 2. walks
- 3. get
- 4. playing
- 5. is singing
- 6. are playing
- 7. visitina
- 8. is cooking
- 9. is having
- 10. watching

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Where are you from?
- 2. Yes, it is.
- 3. I'm staying in a hotel in Cairo.
- 4. How long will you stay in Egypt?
- 5. I will visit Luxor and Aswan.

2- Read and complete the text with words from the list

- 1. nature
- 2. weekends
- 3. house
- 4. dark

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. list
- 2. b. journal
- 3. c. restaurant
- 4. b. spent
- 5. a. take
- 6. c. cinema
- 7. c. Is

- 8. d. walking
- 9. c. are you doing 10. c. isn't doing
- 11. b. are playing 12. b. are getting

4- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. staying
- 2. am eating
- 3. playing
- 4. opening
- 5. learning

5- Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

- 1. I play football with my friends on Thursdays.
- 2. What are you doing now?
- 3. We're going to the tennis court.

Lessons 3 & 4

Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

- 1 b hard 2. a. advice
- 3. c. cool 4. d. hardly

Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I usually spend my free time reading.
- 2. What do you like to read?
- 3. From the school library.
- 4. Of course you can.
- 5. When can I take them?

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. d. strina
- 2 c stall
- 3. a. break
- 4. b. bracelet
- 5. a. ingredients
- 6. a. stressed
- 7. b. homemade
- 8. b. break
- 9. a. advice
- 10. b. hard
- 11. a. surprised
- 12. b. lemonade
- 13. c. Maybe
- 14. c. cupcakes
- 15. c. cool
- 16. c. weather
- 17. d. string
- 18. b. worried
- 19. a. dis-
- 20. b. make
- 21 a about
- 22. b. do

Language

Exercises on Language

1- Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:

- 1. c. them
- 2. d. She
- 3. b. us
- 4. c. them

- 5. b. He
- 6. d. her
- 7. a. We
- 8. a. me
- 9. c. him
- 10. b. Theu
- 11. c. them
- 12. d. her
- 13. c. us
- 14. a. them
- 15. b. We
- 16. b. She

- 17. c. him
- 18. a. She
- 19. b. us
- 20. c. he

2- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. it
- 2. Theu
- 3. him
 - 5. me
- 4. He 6. you
- 7. It
- 8. us
- 9. me
- 10. her
- 11. him
- 12. it

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I like Koshari.
- 2. What does it contain?
- 3. Is it delicious?
- 4. I like fish also.
- 5. That's a good idea.

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. share
- 2. b. join
- 3. b. cool
- 4. b. principal
- 5. b. bazaar

9. d. me

- 6. c. He 8. b. she
- 7. c. us
- 10. b. she

3-Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. her
- 2. he
- 3 him
- 4. us
- 5. us
- 6. They
- 7. them
- 8. her
- 10. She 9. me

4- Read and complete the text with words from the list:

- 1. party
- 2. invited
- 3. success
- 4. marks

Lessons 5 & 6

Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. a. quiet
- 2. b. quite
- 3. c. missed
- 4. a. beach
- 5. c. on



Exercises on Vocabulary

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Yes. I do.
- 2. What do like doing?
- 3. What is geocaching?
- 4. Yes.it is .
- 5. I like reading

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. b. Geocaching
- 2. b. set
- 3. d. making
- 4. d. activity
- 5. a. hometown
- 6. d. challenge
- 7. a. solve
- 8. b. record
- 9. b. classmate 10. d. coordinates
- 11. a. geocache
- 12. c. clue
- 13. a. geeky
- 14. a. logbook
- 15. b. explore
- 16. a. tips
- 17. b. relaxing
- 18. a. app
- 19. c. summarize
- 20. c. hidden
- 21. a. exciting
- 22. b. -ing
- 23. c. on
- 24. b. included
- 25. b. out

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Yes, I did.
- 2. When did you do it?
- 3. Do you like drawing?
- 4. I like drawing animals.
- 5. That's interesting.

2- Choose the correct answer from a,

- b, c or d:
- 1. b. post
- 2. g. missed
- 3. d. explore
- 4. b. solve

- 5. c. shells
- 6. b. extra
- 7. b. through
- 8. d. discussed
- 9. a. noticed
- 10. c. own
- 11. b. normal

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

- 1. They found two million dollars.
- 2. Because they returned the money to the police.
- 3. In the big hole.
- 4. d. No.
- 5. d. in the evening.
- 6. b. hole.

4- Read and complete the text with words from the list

- 1. hobbu
- 2. classmates
- 3. geeky
- 4. challenge

5- Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1. Yes I like reading, football and geocaching.
- 2. Ameera got the full mark. That's amazing.

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a. In Egypt
- 2. d. Delicious
- 3. c. The High Dam
- 4. b. A postcard

2. Complete the following dialogue:

Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Yes, there is.
- 2. In which floor is it?
- 3. How often do you go there?

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b. c or d:

- 1. b. geocache 2. d. string
- 3. b. cool
- 4. b. us
- 5. b. is

4- Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

- 1. He is from Port Said.
- 2. Science and English.

- 3. He wants to be a doctor.
- 4. a. swim in a river
- 5. b. Asia

5- Rearrange the following words to make meaningful sentences:

- I take evening classes to learn new skills.
- 2. I love to learn recipes from my mother.
- 3. I love coloring and painting.
- 4. My favorite thing is to draw animals.

General Exercises on Unit (3)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a. two
- 2. b. engineer
- 3. d. happy
- 4. b. school

2- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Where did you go last summer?
- 2. I went with my family.
- 3. Is Hurghada a beautiful city?
- 4. Yes, It was interesting?
- 5. Where did you stay there?

3- Read and complete the text with words from the list:

- 1. prep
- 2. years
- 3. brothers
- 4 .reading

4- Read the following, then answer the questions:

- 1. Because she always gets high marks in all subjects.
- 2. By the side of the road.
- 3. He helps sick people.
- 4. c. housewife
- 5. b. hospital
- 6. a. father

5- Choose the correct answer from a, b. c or d:

- 1. c. learn
- 2. b. relax

- 3. d. coordinates 4. a. recipe
- 5. c. for 6. b. is visiting
- 7. b. me
- 8. c. is
- 9. c. is doing
- 10. d. them

6- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. writing
- 2. her
- 3. is coming
- 4. building

5- Punctuate the following sentences:

- One day, Nermine, Sarah and Ella decided to make their own geocache.
- 2. No, I don't like orange juice.



Lessons 1 & 2

Check on Lang. Notes (p.160)

- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. d. Click
- 2. a. making
- 3. b. electric
- 4. c. do
- 5. b. to start

Vocabulary (p.163) Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Who bought it?
- 2. Why did he buy it?
- 3. No, not yet.
- 4. Before using it, choose a hard password to guess.
- 5. You are welcome.

2. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. d. Solar.
- 2. b. app.
- 3. c. delete.
- 4. a. friendlu.
- 5. b. Drag
- 6. c. take
- 7. a. talking
- o. c. take
- 9. d. battery.
- 8. c. insert 10. a. panels.

- 11. b. Tap. 12. c. run
- 13. c. Social media.
- 14. a. advertisement.
- 15. c. ATM 16. d. devices.
- 17. c. search. 18. b. green
- 19. c. fitness 20. a. new
- 21. d. eco- 22. b. -ion
- 23. b. for 24. d. out
- 25. b. away

3. Reorder:

- 1. The world's oceans are full of plastic.
- 2. Find the camera icon and click on it.
- 3. I can not use my phone.
- 4. Have you got the app on your phone?

Language (p.166)

Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d. turn
- 2. c. Never use
- 3. a. forget
- 4. a. Find
- 5. d. studu
- 6. b. leave
- 7. c. take
- 8. d. open
- 9. b. stay
- 10. c. Never
- 11. c. don't
- 12. a. Be
- 13. a. close
- 14. a. put on
- 15. a. raise
- 16. a. turn off
- 17. a. pack
- 18. a. Take off
- 19. a. answer
- 20. c. throw
- 21. c. forget

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- 1. stop
- 2. press
- 3. skip
- 4. choose
- 5. listen
- 6. studu
- 7. do
- 8. Keep
- 9. show
- 10. Never swim

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Yes, of course.
- 2. Go straight on then turn right. It is on the left.
- 3. How far is it?
- 4. Can I take a taxi?
- 5. Thanks.

2. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. d. recycle
- 2. b. battery
- 3. b. click
- 4. a. insert
- 5. c. connect
- 6. d. remember
- 7. d. Always
- 8. c. run
- 9. a. Show
- 10. b. turn

3. Complete the sentences with correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- 1. Insert
- 2. wait
- 3. never / Don't
- 4. Install
- 5. Always help / Help

Lessons 3 & 4

Check on Lang. Notes (p.173)

- Choose the correct answer:
 - 1. b. platforms.
 - 2. d. agree
 - 3. a. to shout
 - 4. b. like

Vocabulary (p.176)

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Yes, I do
- 2. How many hours do you spend on social media?
- 3. How can you keep safe online?
- 4. Yes, I do
- 5. I chat with them 3 times a week.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b. Prove
- 2. c. accept
- 3. d. nastu
- 4. b. Efficiently
- 5. b. post
- 6. a. hackers
- 7. c. aim
- 8. a. cyberbullying
- 9. c. freezes
- 10. c. personal
- 11. c. cool
- 12. a. date
- 13. b. characters 14. c. password
- 15. b. internet
- 16. d. downloaded 18. b. difference
- 17. a. checking 19. d. doing
- 20. c. safe
- 21. c. click
- 22. d. from

3. Read and complete the text with words from the list:

- 1. horrible
- 2. hide behind
- 3. cuberbullying 4. out with

4. Punctuate:

- 1. If I don't wear my glasses, I can't see well.
- 2. Why does Mr. Ahmed say that?

Language (p.179)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. rains
- 2. b. have
- 3. a. If
- 4. b. melts
- 5. d. take

7. c. don't get

- 6. b. freeze
- 9. b. feel
- 8. d. happens 10. c. breaks

- 11. a. stau
- 12. a. put
- 13. b. die
- 14. a. become
- 15. d. get
- 16. c. gain
- 17. a. is
- 18. d. click
- 20. c. turns
- 19. b. grow

2. Complete the sentences with correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- 1. can not
- 2. get
- 3. don't remember
- 4. Do
- 5. doesn't

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I'm reading an article.
- 2. What is it about?
- 3. I think phones.
- 4. Why do you say that?
- 5. I agree with you.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the list

- 1 mix
- 2 characters
- 3. guess
- 4. hackers

3. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. hateful
- 2. a. agree
- 3. b. chatting
- 4. d. behind
- 5. a. practise
- 6. c. don't
- 7. b. take

4 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. grow
- 2. Does
- 3. What
- 4. If/When
- 5. do

Lessons 5 & 6

Check on Lang. Notes (p.185)

- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. Maybe.
- 2. d. gone





1. Read and complete the text with words from the list:

- 1. scientific.
- 2. groups
- 3. winners.
- 4. prizes

2. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. edition
- 2. a. awesome
- 3. d. expensive
- 4. c. lead
- 5. b. scam
- 6. d. cautious
- 7. a. embarrassed
- 8. d. life
- 9. b. official
- 10. c. reviews
- 11. d. savings
- 12. b. groups
- 13. c. careless
- 14. c. adjective16. b. talented
- 15. d. -y
- 40
- 17. a. catch
- 18. c. show
- 19. b. for
- 20. b. catching
- 21. c. sale

22 .b. participate

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I got scammed
- 2. What happened?
- 3. Did it arrive?
- 4. I don't know
- 5. OK. Thank you.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c. Embarrassed
- 2. a. winner
- 3. d. skills
- 4. d. sad
- 5. b. make
- 6. c. forum
- 7. d. aged
- 8. b. hurt
- 9. a. limited
- 10. b. scientific
- 11. d. scammer
- 12. b. up

4. Punctuate:

- 1. Why does Ali trust the seller at first?
- 2. Egyptian students won many prizes.

Al Azhar Exercises

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Friday
- 2. father

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Thank you.
- 2. It is 10.000 pounds.
- 3. When did you buy it?

Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d:

- 1. a. false
- 2. c. cautious
- 3. d. face
- 4. b. leave
- 5. b. when

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- 1. Because they are flexible, accurate and can store a lot of information.
- 2. In banks, factories and at home.
- 3. Yes, they make it easy and fun.
- 4. computers
- 5. pleased

5. Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

- 1. What can you do at an EcoATM?
- 2. Don't skip your lessons.
- 3. I think phones are important
- 4. Ali worked hard at the restaurant

General Exercises on Unit (4)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:

- 1. A nurse
- 2. Busu
- 3 children's ward
- 4. To have a rest

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. He is a teacher
- 2. Where does he work?
- 3. Which subject does he teach?
- 4. Yes, he does.
- 5. No, I don't.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the list:

- 1. request
- 2. profile
- 3. chat
- 4. personal

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- 1. Robots.
- 2. Yes, they can entertain children.
- 3. We use robots in different fields like exploring dangerous places, studying and traveling to another places.
- 4. popular
- 5. robots
- 6. faces

5. Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d:

- 1. device
- 2. efficiently
- 3. realized
- 4. headphones
- 5. gims
- 6. happens
- 7. press
- 8. point
- 9. add
- 10. reads

6. Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. Be
- 2. speak
- 3. can't
- 4. cools





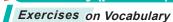
Lessons 1 & 2



- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. b. because of
- 2. b. too
- 3. b. effect





1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Yes I did.
- 2. It means when there isn't enough clean, fresh water for everyone.
- 3. How does it happen?
- 4. What should we do?
- 5. That's a good idea.

2. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. b. drought
- 2. c. heatstroke
- 3. b. flood
- 4. b. wildfire

- 5. b. storm
- 6. c. water scarcity

7. b. bed

8. b. surface

9. b. climate

10. b. earn

11. c. ill

12. a. simple

13. b. plenty 15. b. effect 14. b. Flood

17. b. for

16. b. illnesses18. b. normal

19. c. on

20. b. average

Language (p.209:210)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a,

b, c or d:

1. b. highest

2. c. smaller

3. b. better

4. c. worst

5. d. higher

6. b. biggest

7. c. more

8. b. drier 10. b. most

9. c. than

11. a. the tallest

13. b. best

12. c. least 14. d. than

15. c. tallest

16. b. heaviest

17. c. best

18. b. bigger

19. c. most dangerous

20. b. easiest

2. Read and correct:

1. most

2. biggest

3. newer

4. highest

5. better

6. the most

7. hotter

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Can high temperature affect us?
- You shouldn't walk in the sun for a long time
- 3. How can high temperature affect us?
- 4. You are right.
- 5. We should help the environment to save our world.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the list

- 1. higher
- 2. affects
- 3. grow
- 4. earn

3. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. b. flood
- 2. c. guieter
- 3. c. air conditionina
- 4. b. as
- 5. c. more
- 6. a. transportation

4. Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. The most exciting
- 2. than
- 3. least
- 4. older

5. Punctuate the following sentences:

1. I'm Ahmed. I live in Luxor.

Lessons 3 & 4

Check on Lang. Notes (p.215)

- Choose the correct answer:
 - 1. b. of
- 2. c. from

Vocabulary (p.217:218)



1. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. b. Making
- 2. a. marbles
- 3. c. recycle
- 4. d. rock
- 5. b. makes
- 6. c. materials
- 7. b. audience
- 8. c. result

- 9. b. sandstone
- 10. d. planet
- 11. a. Eco-friendlu
- 12. a. statues
- 13. b. melt
- 14. c. re-
- 15. c. bird feeder
- 16. b. waste
- 17. a. ideal
- 18. b. off
- 19. c. set
- 20. c. electric

Language (220:221)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a. the
- 2. d. no article
- 3 d no article
- 4 d an
- 5. c. a
- 6. c. the 8. c. The
- 7. b. a 9 c No article
- 10. c. The
- 11. d. no article
- 12. d. no article
- 13. a. a
- 14. d. no article 16. d. no article
- 15. d. no article
- 17. b. an
- 18. d. The

2. Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. a 3. the
- 2. no article
- 4 the
- 5. the
- 6. the
- 7. no article
- 8. a
- 9. no article

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. It means to help the environment.
- 2. We should save energy?
- 3. You can save water.
- 4. What can I do to save water?
- 5. you are right.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the list

- 1. reuse
- 2. example
- 3. feeder
- 4. basket

3. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. alarm
- 2 b waste
- 3. b. hanging basket
- 4. c. feeder
- 5. c. an
- 6. d. surface
- 7. b. a
- 8. b. shower
- 9. b. no article
- 10. c. reuse

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- 1 football
- 2 the best
- 3. an hour
- 4. The River Nile

Lessons 5 & 6

Check on Lang. Notes (p.226)

- Choose the correct answer:
 - 1. a. plants
- 2. b. poet
- 3. b. planet

Vocabulary (p.228)



- 1. Complete the following dialogue:
 - 1. b. poet.
- 2. b. Worth.
- 3. a. documentary 4. b. save
- 5. b. recyclable
- 6. b. stanzas
- 7. b. changes
- 8. b. trash
- 9. a. tech
- 10. b. resources
- 11. a. cycling
- 12. b. tap
- 13. b. effects
- 14. b. dives
- 15. b. off
- 16. b. to

Language (230:231)



- 1. Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:
 - 1. d. and
- 2. c. because
- 3. a. because
- 4. c. but
- 5. d. because

- 6. b. and
- 7. b. and
- 8. b. because
- 9. a. because
- 10. b. because
- 11. c. and
- 12. a. and
- 13. b. but
- 14. c. but
- 15. c. because
- 2. Complete the following dialogue:
 - 1. and
- 2. and
- 3. because
- 4. because

- 5. because
- 6. but
- 7. and
- 8. because

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

- 1. Complete the following dialogue:
 - 1. What is it about?
 - 2. What should I do?
 - 3. You can save electricity.
 - 4. Yes, I do.
 - 5. It's a good idea.
- 2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. b. documentary 2. c. structure
 - 3. b. need
- 4. c. and
- 5. a. eco-friendly
 - 6. b. for 8. b. but
- 7. c. to
- 9. b. dive
- 10. b. takes
- 3. Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:
 - 1. Don't throw plastic where dolphins
 - 2. I wanted to be more eco-friendly.
 - 3. I always look for the right type of recycling bin.

Al Azhar Exercises

- 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 2. b. shower 1. b. eco-friendly
- 2. Complete the following dialogue:
 - 1. I'm reading a book.
 - 2. It's about rocks.
 - 3. What are they?
- 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b. c or d:
 - b. scarcitu
- 2. d. than
- 3. b. Drought
- 4. a. melts
- 5. a. off
- 4. Read the following, then answer the questions:
 - 1. Tupes of rocks.
 - 2. Basalt and sandstone.
 - 3. Sandstone is usually found near the Earth's surface.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4. b. rocks
- 5. b. surface

5. Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

- 1. Climate change affects the Earth's weather.
- 2. They grow vegetables in the garden.
- 3. Making electricity uses a lot of the planet's resources.
- 4. Saving energy is important for our planet.

General Exercises on Unit (4)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:

- 1. b. environment 2. c. lights
- 3. b. showers
- 4. c. plastic

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. How is the weather today?
- 2. What should we do?
- 3. You can save energy.
- 4. What can I do to save energy?
- 5. OK. I'll do that.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the list:

- 1. warmer
- 2. hot
- 3. drought
- 4. leaves

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- 1. Water scarcity
- 2. One of the reasons for water scarcity is climate change.
- 3. Water scarcity has a bad effect on people.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4. b. farmers
- 5. b. children
- 6. b. safe

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b. showers 2. b. consume
- 4. c. The 3. c. and
- 6. b. -able 5. b. eco-friendly 7. b. set 8. b. wildfire
- 9. b. most 10. c. worst

6. Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. the oldest 2. the biggest
- 3. the world 4. and



Lessons 1 & 2

Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. to finish 2. b. walking
- 3. b. desert 4. b. dessert



Exercises on Vocabulary

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. What is it made of?
- 2. Are there shops of falafel in Cairo?
- 3. It's cheap. It costs 5 pounds.
- 4. It's koshari.
- 5. What's koshari?

2- Read and complete

- 1. delicious 2. desserts
- 3. koshari 4. vegetables

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. a. course 2. b. restaurant
- 4. b. dessert 3. b. ordered
- 6. a. meal 5. b. apartment
- 7. d. starter 8. b. tastes
- 9. b. menu 10. b. filled
- 11. d. next 12. c. from
- 14. b. delicious 13. a. boring
- 15. c. famous 16. a. city

- 17. c. Egyptian 18. b. order
- 19. a. popular
- 20. a. comfortable
- 21. c. plate 22. b. change
- 23. d. in 24. c. took
- 25. b. make

Language Exercises on Language

1- Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:

- 1. c. When
 - 2. b. did
- 3. d. How 4. b. Who
- 5. c. sit 6. c. was
- 7. a. had 8. d. went
- 9. c. go 10. d. played
- 11. b. Were 12. a. feel
- 13. d. do 14. c. was
- 15. a. visited 16. b. watched 17. b. didn't 18. d. gave
- 19. a. did 20. c. had

2- Complete the sentences:

- 1. were 2. When
- 3. did 4. go 5. played 6. slept
- 7. was

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Because my brother is in hospital.
- 2. What happened?
- 3. How did he break his leg?
- 4. My father.
- 5. OK

2- Read and complete

- 2. bread 1. Egyptian
- 3. like 4. delicious

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. course 2. a. coffee
- 3. c. at 4. b. apartment

5. a. meals 6. b. ingredients 7. d. healthy 8. a. celebrate 10. b. boil 9. d. oven

4- Complete the sentences:

1. travel 2. did 3. did 4. was

Lessons 3 & 4

Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. a. recipe
- 2. b. to find
- 3. c. tastu

Vocabulary Exercises on Vocabulary

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. My favorite dish is koshari.
- 2. What are its ingredients?
- 3. What about desserts?
- 4. Yes. I do.
- 5. That's a good idea.

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1. c. recipe 2. a. task 3. d. famous 4. a. ingredients 5. b. serve 6. d. festival 7. c. tastu 8. a. grilled 9. c. season 10. b. pancakes 11. d. dried 12. a. cylinder 13. c. pudding 14. b. unknown 16. c. covered 15. b. -an
- 17. b. do 18. b. research
- 19. a. on

3- Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1. In China, we always cook special noodles on weekends.
- 2. What's your favorite celebration dish on Christmas in Egypt?



1- Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d:

b, c or u.

1. b. During

2. d. into

3. a. on

4. c. at home

5. c. here

6. g. Tomorrow

7. d. Last Friday

8. b. in Alexandria

9. b. near

10. b. in

11. a. there

12. d. on

13. a. during

14. c. into

15. b. over

16. a. upstairs

17. c. between

18. b. next

19. d. for

2- Complete the sentences:

1. there

2. During

3. yesterday

4. between

5. outside

6. every

7 in

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. My favorite food is pizza.
- 2. Where is pizza popular in?
- 3. What are its ingredients?
- 4. Because manu countries eat it.
- 5. You are welcome.

2- Read and complete

1. recipe

2. ingredients

3. dessert

4. on

3- Choose the correct answer:

1. c. decorated

2. a. went

3. d. language

4. b. famous

5. c. poured

6. a. inside

7. d. during

8. c. outdoors

9. b. at

10. a. over

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. What's your favorite food?
- 2. Is it healthy?
- 3. I like salad.
- 4. What are its ingredients?
- 5. I like basbousa.

2- Read and complete

1. reuse

2. straws

3. environment

4. compost

3- Choose the correct answer:

1. b. container

2. b. crispy

3. c. salty

4. b. park

5. b. bloom

6. a. ceiling

7. d. set

8. d. hung

9. b. dish

o. a. nang

9. D. UISI

10. c. delicious

11. b. grounds

12. a. straw

13. c. compost

15. b. buns

14. b. cafés16. b. hanging

io. b. buil

To. D. Harigii

17. c. hurt

18. b. crispy

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. engineer

2. c. by bus

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. My father's name is Adel .
- 2. How old is he?
- 3. What's his favorite subject?

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. ingredient

2. a. coffee

3. c. at

4. b. apartment

5. a. meals

4- Read the following, then answer the questions:

1. Mona's favorite subject is English.

- 2. Mona often helps her grandmother in the kitchen.
- 3. She usually sleeps at half past nine.
- 4. c. Luxor
- 5. d. grandmother
- 6. c. at night

5- Reorder the following words:

- 1. Suzy bought some snacks.
- 2. I filled balloons with air.
- 3. My house is next to the cinema.
- 4. The bank is over there.

General Exercises on Unit (6)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a. the same
- 2. b. Ola
- 3. b. bus
- 4. b. listen to music

2- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I went to Aswan last year.
- 2. How did you go there?
- 3. I went with my father.
- 4. It was great.
- 5. What did you see there?

3- Read and complete the text with words from the list:

- 1. at
- 2. swimming
- 3. friends
- 4. pool

4- Read the following, then answer the questions:

- 1. Mohamed Salah
- 2. He always talks to his fans
- 3. Yes, I do. Because he gives money to build schools.
- 4. b. Salah
- 5. c. slow
- 6. c. video

5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. boil 2. d. language

a. ceiling
 b. c. bin
 b. When
 d. d. set
 c. at
 b. during

9. a. What 10. c. was

6- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. were
- 2. When
- 3. did
- 4. yesterday